



The European Agricultural Fund  
for Rural Development:  
Europe investing in rural areas



# Countrywide Stewardship:

## Higher Tier Options, Supplements and Capital Items

Revised March 2017

Published 6th April 2016



# Index

## Higher Tier Options and Supplements

Code	Option title	Payment rate	Page
BE4	Management of traditional orchards	£212 per ha	6
BE5	Creation of traditional orchards	£281 per ha	8
BE6	Veteran tree surgery	£221 per tree	10
BE7	Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees	£62 per tree	12
CT1	Management of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle	£217 per ha	13
CT2	Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland	£314 per ha	16
CT3	Management of coastal saltmarsh	£77 per ha	18
CT4	Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land	£442 per ha	20
CT5	Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention	£271 per ha	23
CT6	Coastal vegetation management supplement	£117 per ha	26
CT7	Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland	£276 per ha	27
ED1	Educational access	£290 per visit	30
GS6	Management of species-rich grassland	£182 per ha	32
GS7	Restoration towards species-rich grassland	£145 per ha	34
GS8	Creation of species-rich grassland	£267 per ha	36
GS9	Management of wet grassland for breeding waders	£264 per ha	38
GS10	Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl	£157 per ha	40
GS11	Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders	£406 per ha	42
GS12	Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl	£310 per ha	44
GS13	Management of grassland for target features	£90 per ha	46
GS14	Creation of grassland for target features	£253 per ha	49
HS7	Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation	£440 per ha	52
LH1	Management of lowland heathland	£274 per ha	55
LH2	Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland	£184 per ha	58
LH3	Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland	£517 per ha	61
SP1	Difficult sites supplement	£62 per ha	64
SP2	Raised water level supplement	£127 per ha	66
SP3	Bracken control supplement	£153 per ha	68
SP4	Control of invasive plant species supplement	£324 per ha	70
SP5	Shepherding supplement	£7 per ha	72
SP7	Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly	£279 per ha	74
SP8	Native breeds at risk supplement	£94 per ha	75
SP9	Threatened species supplement	£120 per ha	77
SP10	Administration of group managed agreements supplement	£6 per ha	78
SW12	Making space for water	£640 per ha	79
SW13	Very low nitrogen inputs to groundwaters	£251 per ha	82
SW15	Flood mitigation on arable reversion to grassland	£488 per ha	84
SW16	Flood mitigation on permanent grassland	£256 per ha	87
UP2	Management of rough grazing for birds	£88 per ha	90

Code	Option title	Payment rate	Page
UP3	Management of moorland	£43 per ha	93
UP4	Management of moorland vegetation supplement	£10 per ha	95
UP5	Moorland re-wetting supplement	£18 per ha	97
UP6	Upland livestock exclusion supplement	£16 per ha	99
WD1	Woodland creation - maintenance payments	£200 per ha	101
WD2	Woodland improvement	£100 per ha	102
WD4	Management of wood pasture and parkland	£46 per ha	104
WD5	Restoration of wood pasture and parkland	£244 per ha	107
WD6	Creation of wood pasture	£409 per ha	110
WD8	Creation of successional areas and scrub	£87 per ha	112
WT3	Management of ditches of high environmental value	£37 per 100m for both sides of the ditch	114
WT4	Pond management – first 100 sq m	£103 per pond	116
WT5	Pond management (areas more than 100 sq m)	£183 per pond	118
WT6	Management of reedbed	£78 per ha	120
WT7	Creation of reedbed	£323 per ha	122
WT8	Management of fen	£39 per ha	124
WT9	Creation of fen	£446 per ha	126
WT10	Management of lowland raised bog	£164 per ha	128
WT11	Wetland cutting supplement	£440 per ha	130
WT12	Wetland grazing supplement	£304 per ha	131

## Higher Tier Capital Items

Code	Item title	Payment rate	Page
AC1	Access capital items	Up to 100% of actual cost	133
AC2	Countryside Educational Access Visits Accreditation	£175 once per agreement	134
BN9	Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work	£4.10 per m	135
BN15	Stone wall supplement – difficult sites	£7.90 per m	136
FG5	Fencing supplement - difficult sites	£1.24 per m	137
FG6	Invisible fencing system	£1.80 per m	138
FG7	Anti-predator combination fencing	£11.10 per m	139
FG8	Anti-predator temporary electric fencing	£2.85 per m	141
FG9	Deer fencing	£7.20 per m	143
FG10	Temporary deer fencing	£5.20 per m	145
FG11	Deer enclosure plot	£136 per unit	146
FG13	Stone gate post	£280 per post	147
FM1	Management of geodiversity features	Up to 100% of actual costs	148
FM2	Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species	Up to 100% of actual costs	149
FY1	Deer high seat	£300 per unit	151
FY2	Woodland infrastructure	40% of actual costs	152
HE1	Historic and archaeological feature protection	Up to 100% of actual costs	154
HE2	Historic building restoration	Up to 80% of actual costs	156

Code	Item title	Payment rate	Page
<b>HE3</b>	Removal of eyesore	£290 per item	158
<b>LV1</b>	Cattle grid	£835 per item	159
<b>LV2</b>	Livestock handling facilities	Up to 80% of actual costs	160
<b>RP8</b>	Constructed wetlands for the treatment of pollution	50% of costs	162
<b>RP31</b>	Equipment to disrupt tramlines in arable areas	£1500 per machine	164
<b>RP32</b>	Small leaky woody dam	£461.39 per dam	166
<b>RP33</b>	Large leaky woody dam	£764.42 per dam	168
<b>SB1</b>	Scrub control and felling diseased trees	Various	170
<b>SB2</b>	Scrub control - difficult sites	Up to 80% of actual costs	172
<b>SB3</b>	Tree removal	£144 per tree	174
<b>SB4</b>	Chemical bracken control	£170 per ha	175
<b>SB5</b>	Mechanical bracken control	£169 per ha	177
<b>SB6</b>	Rhododendron control	Various	179
<b>TE2</b>	Planting standard parkland trees	£24.50 per tree	181
<b>TE4</b>	Supply and plant a tree	£1.28 per tree	182
<b>TE5</b>	Supplement for use of individual tree-shelters	£1.60 per unit	185
<b>TE9</b>	Parkland tree guard - welded steel	£170 per tree	186
<b>TE12</b>	Stump grinding	£24 per stump	187
<b>TE13</b>	Creation of deadwood habitat on trees	£175 per tree	188
<b>TE14</b>	Identification of orchard fruit tree varieties	£29 per variety	191
<b>WN1</b>	Grip blocking drainage channels	£14.80 per block	192
<b>WN2</b>	Creation of scrapes and gutters	£2.80 per square m	194
<b>WN3</b>	Ditch, dyke and rhine restoration	£7.30 per m	196
<b>WN4</b>	Ditch, dyke and rhine creation	£8.40 per m	198
<b>WN7</b>	Restoration of large water bodies	Up to 100% of actual costs	200
<b>WN8</b>	Timber sluice	£315 per sluice	201
<b>WN9</b>	Brick, stone or concrete sluice	£2480 per sluice	203
<b>WN10</b>	Construction of water penning structures	Up to 100% of actual costs	205

# Introduction to Higher Tier options and capital items

Countryside Stewardship offers a range of management options and capital items. These can be applied for in different combinations to create an agreement.

This document describes those available only through the Higher Tier.

This document is split into two sections. Section 1 describes the Higher Tier options. Section 2 describes the capital items.

Each description is broken down into sections covering:

- Payment rate
- Where it can and cannot be used (eligibility)
- How it will benefit the environment
- Requirements, including keeping records
- Advice and suggestions for how to carry it out

Some may also include a list of related options and items.

Higher Tier applicants can also use Mid Tier options and capital items. Information about these is available through the Countryside Stewardship Grants Tool: <https://www.gov.uk/countryside-stewardship-grants> or as a downloadable PDF at <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-mid-tier-including-water-quality-capital-items-manual>

Higher Tier applicants have scope to tailor the requirements in both the Higher Tier and Mid Tier options and capital items to the specific needs of the location. Through the Higher Tier application process applicants will be allocated a Natural England adviser or Forestry Commission officer who will be able advise on the scope for tailoring and help refine the final choice of options and items in an application.

Some Higher Tier applications may require the applicant to complete plans in advance:

- Implementation Plan <https://www.gov.uk/countryside-stewardship-grants/implementation-plan-pa1>
- Feasibility Study <https://www.gov.uk/countryside-stewardship-grants/feasibility-study-pa2>
- Woodland Management Plan <https://www.gov.uk/countryside-stewardship-grants/woodland-management-plan-pa3>

The Higher Tier Manual is an essential part of a Higher Tier agreement and should be consulted alongside the options and capital items, for general scheme requirements as well as help in making an application.

The Higher Tier Manual is available on GOV.UK at <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-higher-tier-manual>

# Section 1:

## **Higher Tier Options**

# Management of traditional orchards (BE4) Higher Tier

## £212 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part-parcel

Only on traditional orchards (apple, pear, cherry, plum, damson or cobnut plots) where at least one-third of the original stations are occupied by trees over 25 years old.

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the parcel, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS).

- ditches
- drains
- dykes
- rivers and streams (boundary or internal)

The features must be less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel.

### How this option will benefit the environment

If successful there will be a well-managed traditional orchard with a range of healthy young and old trees. This includes established grass, tall bushy hedges, scrub and tall herb vegetation abundant with invertebrates, birds and wildflowers.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage grassland by grazing or hay cutting
- maintain the characteristic tree form by pruning
- restore tree numbers
- protect trees from damage by livestock
- keep and protect all mature and over-mature standing trees
- keep some standing deadwood and some deadwood on living trees
- use no manures, fertilisers, pesticides or supplementary feed
- control scrub and invasive species

### Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- roll or harrow

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with any work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- dates and locations of formative or maintenance pruning carried out for each parcel
- a base map or table showing the location, species, rootstock, variety and age class of trees present in each parcel
- a monthly record of stock numbers grazing each parcel

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.



You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- if managing by hay cutting, photographs of the areas cut and uncut in each parcel
- photographs of cut areas of scrub

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- a map of existing land drainage in each parcel
- a photograph of each tree entered into the option

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE6 – Veteran tree surgery
- BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees
- ED1 - Educational access
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OR5 - Organic conversion - top fruit
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT5 - Organic land management - top fruit
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### Traditional orchards

Traditional orchards are defined as groups of fruit and nut trees planted on vigorous rootstocks at low densities in permanent grassland, and managed in a low intensity way. Cobnut plats are included.

### Preventing weeds

Prevent weeds from competing with newly planted trees for water and nutrients. Keep a 1m diameter circle clear of all vegetation for at least the first 3 years after planting.

# Creation of traditional orchards (BE5) Higher Tier

## £281 per ha

### How long the option lasts

This option will last for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole and part-parcel

Only on:

- traditional orchards (apple, pear, cherry, plum, damson or cobnut plants) where less than one-third of the original stations are occupied by trees over 25 years old
- sites with evidence (such as maps or photographs) that a traditional orchard was once there - this includes sites currently under arable cultivation
- sites where creation extends, links or buffers existing areas of a traditional orchard

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the parcel, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS).

- ditches
- drains
- dykes
- rivers and streams (boundary or internal)

The features must be less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel.

### How this option will benefit the environment

If successful there will be a well-managed traditional orchard with a range of healthy young and old trees. This includes established grass, tall bushy hedges, scrub and tall herb vegetation abundant with invertebrates, birds and wildflowers.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- establish and then manage grassland by grazing or hay cutting
- maintain the characteristic tree form by pruning
- restore tree numbers
- protect trees from damage by livestock
- keep and protect all mature and over-mature standing trees
- keep some standing deadwood and some deadwood on living trees
- use no manures, fertilisers, pesticides or supplementary feed
- control scrub and invasive species

### Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- roll or harrow

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- dates and locations of formative or maintenance pruning carried out for each parcel
- a base map or table showing the location, species, rootstock, variety and age class of trees present in each parcel

- a monthly record of stock numbers grazing each parcel

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- if managing by hay cutting, photographs of the areas cut and uncut in each parcel
- photographs of cut areas of scrub
- photographs of each tree and all standing deadwood entered into the option in support of an annual claim

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- a map of existing land drainage in each parcel
- a photograph of each tree entered into the option

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE6 – Veteran tree surgery
- BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees
- ED1 - Educational access
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR5 - Organic conversion - top fruit
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- OT5 - Organic land management - top fruit
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form a part of the requirements for this option.*

### Traditional orchards

Traditional orchards are defined as groups of fruit and nut trees planted on vigorous rootstocks at low densities in permanent grassland, and managed in a low intensity way. Cobnut plats are included.

### Preventing weeds

Prevent weeds from competing with newly planted trees for water and nutrients. Keep a 1m diameter circle clear of all vegetation for at least the first 3 years after planting.

## Veteran tree surgery (BE6) Higher Tier

### £221 per tree

#### Where to use this option

Only:

- on veteran open grown trees and trees in open canopy woodlands
- where specialist tree surgery is agreed by Natural England

#### Where this option cannot be used

On the same trees as the following capital items or supplements:

- BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees
- TE10 - Coppicing bankside trees
- TE11 - Tree surgery

#### How this option will benefit the environment

Use this option to reduce the rate of loss of veteran trees by carrying out specialist tree surgery to extend their lifespan.

If successful veteran trees at risk of collapse will have been stabilised, resulting in the continuation of:

- living trees with standing deadwood
- trees forming distinctive features in the landscape
- trees providing valuable habitat
- areas under tree canopies free from scrub, soil compaction, or anything which threatens the tree's longevity

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- carry out agreed tree surgery works within the agreed timetable and dates
- remove secondary growth from around veteran trees
- retain all material close to the tree (not stacked against the veteran tree) and leave undisturbed

Stack cut material in a shaded location. Do not cut it up any more than is necessary to allow safe movement. Do not burn cut material.

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken submitted with the final claim

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- Photographs of each tree
- written support from NE adviser

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE1 - Protection of in-field trees on arable land
- BE2 - Protection of in-field trees on intensive grassland
- BE3 - Management of hedgerows
- BE4 - Management of traditional orchards
- BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards

- WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland
- WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland
- WD6 - Creation of wood pasture

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option:

Tree surgery must be identified in a report by a professionally qualified arboriculturalist. Individual plans for each tree may be required. The timing of work should take account of the impact on the tree, bird breeding season, presence of European Protected Species etc. Permissions may be required.

Many veteran trees have only grown so old through active management, mostly long abandoned. Reinstating management would pose great risk but they can be at significant risk of catastrophic failure due to crown weight.

A tree in general decline should not be pruned any more than necessary to prevent catastrophic failure.

The importance of lower canopy branches increases as trees die back. Their removal should be avoided.

Epicormic shoots (small side shoots) should not be removed as they can take over if the main part of the stem is lost.

Dead and decaying branches, as well as any live material, removed from the tree should be retained close to the source without cutting it up.

Previously open grown trees now surrounded by others may require opening up. Avoid sudden exposure of trees shaded for many years. Clear around the tree at least a year before any tree surgery, possibly in stages over a few years. Make sure any species of interest such as lichens, fungi and invertebrates, as well as hole-nesting birds and roosting bats, are known and the impact of any work assessed.

Burning damages dead wood and soil structure, killing living organisms and harming trees if too close. Activities which damage and compact tree roots, including by stock, should be avoided.

Be aware that various consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- veteran trees often host European Protected Species, such as bats

Read more about useful [tree management, safety information](#) and felling licences from the Forestry Commission. <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement>

Fruit trees in traditional orchards are not normally eligible. See instead BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees.

### Further information

Read these useful guidance booklets for more information on managing ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](#) <http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/>
- Lonsdale, D. (ed.) 2013 Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management. Tree Council
- Read, H. 2000 Veteran trees: A guide to good management. Veteran Trees Initiative, available to download from Natural England publications pages. <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/75035>

## £62 per tree

### Where to use this supplement

Only:

- for a maximum of 3 years on an individual tree
- on neglected fruit trees with options:
  - BE3 - Management of hedgerows
  - BE4 - Management of traditional orchards
  - BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful there will be restored mature fruit trees with undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood providing a habitat for a wide range of invertebrates.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- restore the tree form by pruning
- keep some standing deadwood or dead wood on living trees

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- a photograph of each tree entered into the supplement

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same tree as the following supplement:

- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

# Management of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle (CT1) Higher Tier

## £217 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only on:

- coastal sand dune priority habitat
- vegetated shingle priority habitat

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- scrub
- open water
- bare ground

### How this option will benefit the environment

It is designed to make sure that existing coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle sites are managed appropriately. This includes both sites in good condition or those that need restoration, such as where management has stopped or scrub has invaded.

If successful there will be:

- sand dunes and shingle areas in favourable condition on Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs), meaning they are adequately conserved and are meeting conservation objectives
- sand dunes and shingle areas in improving condition if not on SSSIs, meaning measures are in place that if maintained will make them favourable over time
- a mosaic of open habitats and bare ground with typical sand dune and shingle plant species, such as sand couch, marram grass and sand sedge, although the exact species will depend on the habitat's location
- a gradual change from less stable and seasonal habitats near the beach (including drift line vegetation) to more stable landward habitats, connected by moving sand or shingle

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- provide or maintain areas of bare ground
- carry out extensive grazing (or cutting if grazing is not possible) to encourage vegetation mosaics
- allow natural and dynamic coastal changes, such as changes due to storms or windblow (deposits of windblown sand)
- control scrub or other invasive plant species

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely that agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use fertilisers or manures
- use supplementary feed
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will need to send the following with their application (to ensure no new access or drainage is added during the agreement period):

- a map of permitted access routes
- a map of the land drainage system (if any)

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

Dunes and shingle are important elements of coastal landscapes, with active processes creating variation in their structure. These coastal systems also act as an important form of natural sea defence, and thus play a significant part in adaptation to climate change. The history of management is important to understand: sites that have a tradition of low-intensity grazing should maintain this, while in other areas, such as shingle, the habitat would be damaged if grazing was introduced for the first time.

While grazing is therefore encouraged on many dune sites, it is not mandatory in all cases; where dune grazing is not possible, a selective cutting regime is an acceptable alternative. On many shingle sites, neither grazing nor cutting is appropriate, but this option may still be used where the shingle forms part of a wider coastal system (see below). Any seaweed or driftwood accumulations should be retained.

Where invasion of tall coarse grasses and scrub such as blackthorn, bramble and sea buckthorn has occurred due to under-grazing, capital works should be undertaken to keep the scrub within agreed limits and grazing or cutting regimes adjusted to prevent re-invasion.

Option CT2 - Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland should be considered, if the habitat is expanding through rollback onto nearby arable or grassland. Rollback is the movement of dunes inland due to coastal processes and wind blow.



### Further information

Further information can be found on:

- Buglife habitat management pages for [coastal sand dunes](https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-sand-dunes), <https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-sand-dunes> and [coastal vegetated shingle](https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-vegetated-shingle), <https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-vegetated-shingle>

# Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland (CT2) Higher Tier

## £314 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option runs for 10 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only on land next to existing sand dunes or shingle that is either:

- arable land
- improved grassland

### Where this option cannot be used

For the creation of sand dunes and coastal vegetated shingle in the following situations:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other **Habitat Regulations** requirement <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/uksi/1994/2716/contents/made>
- if the work is necessary as part of a planning permission condition
- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for coastal habitat creation

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- scrub
- open water
- bare ground

### How this option will benefit the environment

It creates sand dunes and coastal vegetated shingle on arable land or improved grassland locations that were:

- once part of sand dune or shingle systems
- next to active sand dune or shingle systems

If successful, developing features will include:

- sand dunes and vegetated shingle
- transition areas (transitions between shingle and dune and nearby habitats)
- the specialised and local species that sand dunes and vegetated shingle in the area support

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- provide or maintain areas of bare ground
- carry out extensive grazing (or cutting if grazing is not possible) to encourage vegetation mosaics
- allow natural and dynamic coastal changes, such as changes due to storms or windblow (deposits of windblown sand)
- control scrub or other invasive plant species

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely that agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use fertilisers or manures
- use supplementary feed
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will need to send the following with their application (to ensure no new access or drainage is added during the agreement period):

- a map of permitted access routes
- a map of the land drainage system (if any)

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

Dunes and shingle are important elements of coastal landscapes, with active processes creating variation in their structure. These coastal systems also act as an important form of natural sea defence, and thus play a significant part in adaptation to climate change. Sand and shingle should be allowed to accumulate or migrate inland following storms and other coastal processes.

While dune vegetation is establishing on the rollback areas some light grazing or cutting may be appropriate, but this should be very carefully monitored to avoid damage. Once dune vegetation is established grazing would be encouraged on most sites, but is not mandatory in all cases. Where dune grazing is not possible, a selective cutting regime is an acceptable alternative. On many shingle sites, neither grazing nor cutting is appropriate, but this option may still be used where the shingle forms part of a wider coastal system (see below). Any seaweed or driftwood accumulations should be retained.

### Further information

Further information can be found on:

- Buglife habitat management pages for [coastal sand dunes](https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-sand-dunes), <https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-sand-dunes> and [coastal vegetated shingle](https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-vegetated-shingle), <https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications/advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-vegetated-shingle>

# Management of coastal saltmarsh (CT3) Higher Tier

## £77 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only on saltmarsh and transitional areas (transitions to adjacent shingle or dune habitats) that are both:

- above mean high water neap tide level (the average throughout the year of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is at its smallest)
- covered by seawater between 25 and 600 times a year (1 to 24 times a year for transitional areas)

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the saltmarsh area, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as small lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud (if within the saltmarsh mosaic, but not separate external areas of mudflat)

### How this option will benefit the environment

It maintains coastal saltmarsh in good condition and restores saltmarsh in unfavourable condition when grazing or cutting are key factors.

If successful there will be:

- saltmarsh areas in favourable condition on Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs), meaning they are adequately conserved and are meeting conservation objectives
- saltmarsh areas in improving condition if not on SSSIs, meaning measures are in place that if maintained will make them favourable over time
- a mosaic of open habitats and bare ground with typical saltmarsh plant species such as sea aster, sea purslane, sea-blite and sea-lavender, although the exact species will depend on the location of the saltmarsh
- a gradual change from less stable and seasonal habitats on the seaward side to the more stable, well-established landward saltmarsh and transitions covered only by the highest tides

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- maintain or re-introduce favourable management, mainly through suitable grazing, where appropriate, but also by limiting disturbance
- continue an appropriate grazing regime (the right types of stock, in the right numbers and at the right times of year) or exclude grazing where necessary, such as to restore condition or prevent erosion
- maintain the saltmarsh vegetation by not disturbing the surface, but allow natural and dynamic coastal changes, such as changes due to storms or windblow

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely that agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use fertilisers or manures
- use supplementary feed
- plough, cultivate or re-seed

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken, submitted with final claim

Applicants will need to send the following with their application (to ensure no new access or drainage is added during the agreement period):

- a map of permitted access routes
- a map of the land drainage system (if any)

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement
- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

The precise management agreed will depend on the particular conditions on a site. It could include maintaining an absence of grazing, light grazing and controlling damaging activities associated with public access. This option will contribute to climate change adaptation and help to conserve and strengthen the distinctive local character of estuarine and coastal landscapes.

A site suitable for restoration through this option may be one that is currently being grazed but where this is impacting on the quality of the habitat and associated species. For example, a site may currently be over-grazed or grazed at an inappropriate time of year. Alternatively, it may be a site that needs grazing, but is difficult to graze and has become dominated by a few coarse plant species. Where significant changes to grazing levels are required, these can be supported under the CT6 supplement (to be used with this option). The transitions between saltmarsh and other habitats to landward, exposed to infrequent tidal inundation, can be included in this option as they can support important species and plant communities which are increasingly rare.

Any seaweed or driftwood accumulations should be retained and sediment allowed to accumulate or migrate inland following storms and other coastal processes.

### Further information

Further information can be found in:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual)  
<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual>
- the [climate change adaptation manual](http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/5629923804839936)  
<http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/5629923804839936>

# Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land (CT4)

## £442 per ha

Higher Tier

### How long this option lasts

This option runs for 20 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved and its largely irreversible nature.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on sites that are both:

- next to saltmarsh or other inter-tidal habitats
- arable land that lies behind a coastal defence - most of the land must lie below mean high water spring tide level (the average of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is greatest)

The creation of the inter-tidal habitat must both:

- conform to the [Environment Agency's flood and coastal risk management strategy for England](https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/flood-and-coastal-risk-management-strategy-for-england) <https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/flood-and-coastal-risk-management-strategy-for-england>
- be approved by the Environment Agency and Natural England

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land area (once inter-tidal habitat is created), even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud

### How this option will benefit the environment

It creates inter-tidal and saline habitats, including transitional areas (transitions between saltmarsh and nearby habitats), on arable land or improved grassland.

If successful there will be:

- inter-tidal and saltmarsh areas developing (note that it will not be possible to precisely predict the balance of saltmarsh and mudflat in a dynamic coastal system)
- a mosaic of open habitats such as lagoons, creeks and mud flats
- saltmarsh plants colonising more stable higher areas of the habitats
- lugworm casts, feeding birds and other evidence of marine invertebrates

As a result of tides bringing in sediment and seeds, a range of inter-tidal habitats will form such as mudflats, coastal saltmarsh, together with saline lagoons and transitions between these and other habitats where the topography promotes this. These habitats will benefit many specialised plants and animals adapted to the differing degrees of tidal inundation and saline influence. These factors result in variations in vegetation cover from bare mud to dense saltmarsh, and succession between them over time.

The creation of small-scale saline lagoons, which require an input of seawater, can be promoted by this option. This option will also contribute to more sustainable flood management, adaptation to climate change and enhancement of the coastal landscape. Where sediment is deposited, the option may contribute to the protection of important archaeological sites from the impacts of ploughing or other forms of cultivation (but early consultation with historic specialists will be needed where such sites are present).

### Where this option cannot be used

If the planned creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat is:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other [Habitat Regulations](http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukxi/1994/2716/contents/made) requirement <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukxi/1994/2716/contents/made>
- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for inter-tidal habitat creation

## REQUIREMENTS

A Feasibility Study (PA2) may be required to inform an application that includes this option. It will include how to:

- prepare the site and manage any existing vegetation
- excavate any lagoons or creeks
- manage vegetation once established
- carry out any necessary breaches to the sea wall

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Before applying for this option applicants should contact both Natural England and the Environment Agency for advice.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application (to ensure no new access or drainage is added during the agreement period):

- a map of permitted access routes
- a map of the land drainage system (if any)
- written support from the Environment Agency and Natural England

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement
- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

To ensure that transitional areas are included in the agreement area, the boundary of the agreement should normally extend to Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT) plus 1 metre. This will allow for development of transitional zone, including unusual transitions from saline to brackish to freshwater habitats. Such instances would need to be identified in the initial planning stages prior to completion of the agreement and clearly justified for individual sites.

This is a specialised option that is only likely to be used in a relatively small number of cases, where a managed breach of coastal defences is planned. On sites where there is interest and potential for this option, discussions

should be held with Natural England and the Environment Agency at an early stage. Planning for such projects can often take several years, with coastal process modelling and feasibility studies usually needed.

Where coastal defences are not being maintained and are then overtopped or breached naturally, option CT5 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention would apply.

### **Further information**

Further information is available from:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual)  
<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual>
- The Saltmarsh Creation Handbook: A Project Manager's Guide to the Creation of Saltmarsh and Inter-tidal Mudflat by AS Nottage and PA Robertson (RSPB/CIWEM, 2005)



# Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention (CT5) Higher Tier

## £271 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option runs for 20 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved and its largely irreversible nature.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only on sites that are both:

- next to either saltmarsh or other inter-tidal habitats
- on land that lies behind a coastal defence - most of the land must lie below mean high water spring tide level (the average of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is greatest)

Suitable sites may have:

- defences that are overtopped by high tides
- recently been breached and show evidence of being inundated or percolated by salt water through the defences

The creation of the inter-tidal habitat must both:

- conform to the [Environment Agency's flood and coastal risk management strategy for England](#)
- be approved by the Environment Agency and Natural England

### Where this option cannot be used

If the creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat is:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other [Habitat Regulations](#) requirement
- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for coastal habitat creation

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land area (once inter-tidal habitat is created), even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud

### How this option will benefit the environment

It creates inter-tidal and saline habitats, including transitional areas (transitions between saltmarsh and nearby habitats), following the unmanaged breach of sea walls or the overtopping of sea walls.

If successful there will be:

- inter-tidal and saltmarsh areas developing (note that it will not be possible to precisely predict the balance of saltmarsh and mudflat in a dynamic coastal system)
- a mosaic of open habitats such as lagoons, creeks and mudflats
- saltmarsh plants colonising more stable higher areas of the habitats
- lugworm casts, feeding birds and other evidence of marine invertebrates

As a result of tides bringing in sediment and seeds, a range of inter-tidal habitats will form such as mudflats, coastal saltmarsh, together with saline lagoons and transitions between these and other habitats where the topography promotes this. These habitats will benefit many specialised plants and animals adapted to the differing degrees of tidal inundation and saline influence. These factors result in variations in vegetation cover from bare mud to dense grassland, and succession between them over time.

The creation of small-scale saline lagoons, which require an input of seawater, can be promoted by this option. This option will also contribute to more sustainable flood management, adaptation to climate change and enhancement of the coastal landscape. Where sediment is deposited, the option may contribute to the protection of important archaeological sites from the impacts of ploughing or other forms of cultivation (but early consultation with historic specialists will be needed where such sites are present).

## REQUIREMENTS

If the application is successful the planned management is likely to be detailed in a feasibility study for the site. It will include how to:

- prepare the site and manage any existing vegetation
- excavate any lagoons or creeks
- manage vegetation once established
- make any further breaches to the sea wall, where needed

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Before applying for this option applicants should contact both Natural England and the Environment Agency for advice.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application (to ensure no new access or drainage is added during the agreement period):

- a map of permitted access routes
- a map of land drainage system (if any)
- written support from the Environment Agency and Natural England

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement
- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

To ensure that transitional areas are included in the agreement area, the boundary of the agreement should normally extend to Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT) plus 1 metre. This will allow for development of transitional zone, including unusual transitions from saline to brackish to freshwater habitats. Such

instances would need to be identified in the initial planning stages prior to completion of the agreement and clearly justified for individual sites.

This is a specialised option that is only likely to be used in a relatively small number of cases, where coastal defences are not being maintained and are then overtopped or breached naturally. Where a managed breach is planned, then options CT4 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land or CT7 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland would apply.

On sites where there is interest and potential for this option, discussions should be held with Natural England and the Environment Agency at an early stage. It should be recognised that unmanaged sea wall breaches are of course unpredictable, but contingency plans can be put in place.

### **Further information**

Further information is available from:

- The Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual)  
<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual>
- The Saltmarsh Creation Handbook: A Project Manager's Guide to the Creation of Saltmarsh and Inter-tidal Mudflat by AS Nottage and PA Robertson (RSPB/CIWEM, 2005)

# Coastal vegetation management supplement (CT6) Higher Tier

## £117 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only with one of the following options:

- CT3 - Management of coastal saltmarsh
- CT4 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land
- CT5 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention
- CT7 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports saltmarsh vegetation management, for example by reducing existing levels of grazing, or introducing grazing or cutting.

If successful there will be:

- more varied sward structure and greater wildlife diversity
- better control of any scrub and coarse vegetation
- increased numbers of saltmarsh nesting species (such as redshank) due to more varied vegetation structure
- a reduction in trampling damage where grazing levels have been reduced

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to carry out specific cutting or grazing management tailored to their site.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

### Further information

Further information is available from:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual)  
<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual>
- advice on [managing coastal saltmarsh](https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications-advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-saltmarsh)  
<https://www.buglife.org.uk/advice-and-publications-advice-on-managing-bap-habitats/coastal-saltmarsh>

# Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland (CT7)

£276 per ha

Higher Tier

## How long this option lasts

This option runs for 20 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved and its largely irreversible nature.

## Where to use this option

Whole or part-parcel

Non-rotational

Only on sites that are both:

- next to saltmarsh or other inter-tidal habitats
- grassland that lies behind a coastal defence - most of the land must lie below mean high water spring tide level (the average of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is greatest)

The creation of the inter-tidal habitat must both:

- conform to the [Environment Agency's flood and coastal risk management strategy for England](https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/flood-and-coastal-risk-management-strategy-for-england) <https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/flood-and-coastal-risk-management-strategy-for-england>
- be approved by the Environment Agency and Natural England

## Where this option cannot be used

If the planned creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat is:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other [Habitat Regulations](http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukxi/1994/2716/contents/made) requirement <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukxi/1994/2716/contents/made>
- on areas of grassland priority habitat, unless agreed with Natural England
- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for inter-tidal habitat creation

## Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land area (once inter-tidal habitat is created), even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud

## How this option will benefit the environment

It creates inter-tidal and saline habitats, including transitional areas (transitions between saltmarsh and nearby habitats), on grassland or improved grassland.

If successful there will be:

- inter-tidal and saltmarsh areas developing
- a mosaic of open habitats such as lagoons, creeks and mudflats
- saltmarsh plants colonising more stable higher areas of the habitats
- lugworm casts, feeding birds and other evidence of marine invertebrates

As a result of tides bringing in sediment and seeds, a range of inter-tidal habitats will form such as mudflats, coastal saltmarsh, together with saline lagoons and transitions between these and other habitats where the topography promotes this. These habitats will benefit many specialised plants and animals adapted to the differing degrees of tidal inundation and saline influence. These factors result in variations in vegetation cover from bare mud to dense saltmarsh, and succession between them over time.

The creation of small-scale saline lagoons, which require an input of seawater, can be promoted by this option. This option will also contribute to more sustainable flood management, adaptation to climate change and enhancement of the coastal landscape. Where sediment is deposited, the option may contribute to the protection of important archaeological sites from the impacts of ploughing or other forms of cultivation (but early consultation with historic specialists will be needed where such sites are present).

## REQUIREMENTS

A Feasibility Study (PA2) may be required to inform an application that includes this option. It will include how to:

- prepare the site and manage any existing vegetation
- excavate any lagoons or creeks
- manage vegetation once established
- carry out any necessary breaches to the sea wall

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Before applying for this option applicants should contact both Natural England and the Environment Agency for advice.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application (to ensure no new access or drainage is added during the agreement period):

- a map of permitted access routes
- a map of the land drainage system (if any)
- written support from the Environment Agency and Natural England

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement
- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

To ensure that transitional areas are included in the agreement area, the boundary of the agreement should normally extend to Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT) plus 1 metre. This will allow for development of transitional zone, including unusual transitions from saline to brackish to freshwater habitats. Such instances would need to be identified in the initial planning stages prior to completion of the agreement and clearly justified for individual sites.

This is a specialised option that is only likely to be used in a relatively small number of cases, where a managed breach of coastal defences is planned. On sites where there is interest and potential for this option, discussions should be held with Natural England and the Environment Agency at an early stage. Planning for such projects can often take several years, with coastal process modelling and feasibility studies usually needed.

Where coastal defences are not being maintained and are then overtopped or breached naturally, option CT5 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention would apply.

### Further information

Further information is available from:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual)  
<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/saltmarsh-management-manual>
- The Saltmarsh Creation Handbook: A Project Manager's Guide to the Creation of Saltmarsh and Inter-tidal Mudflat by AS Nottage and PA Robertson (RSPB/CIWEM, 2005)

# Educational access (ED1) Higher Tier

## £290 per visit

### How this option will benefit the environment

It lets school pupils visit the farm for educational experiences. It also allows for the hosting of care farming visits.

If successful there will be positive feedback on the [farm visit evaluation form](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-farm-visit-evaluation). <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-farm-visit-evaluation>

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- carry out a health and safety check and prepare a risk assessment for the farm, then give this to potential group leaders
- complete the online [Farm Facts Template](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-farm-facts-template), <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-farm-facts-template> for the farm within 3 months of the start of the agreement
- carry out enough promotion so that at least 1 and at most 25 group visits happen every year
- make sure the tour of the farm lasts at least 2 hours and is conducted by a member of farm staff or volunteer who suits the visitors' needs
- make sure the tour explains the links between farming, conservation and food production using the agreement land as a classroom
- complete and submit 'Farm Visit Evaluation' online forms for each visit claimed

Do not:

- charge for visits
- receive any other direct income from government funds relating to the educational visit

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- copies of the standard farm visit evaluation form with promotional material submitted annually with claim
- copy of the farm facts leaflet submitted with first claim
- copy of the risk assessment and health and safety check on request

### RELATED OPTIONS

This option can be located with all other options, items and supplements.

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

#### Get letters of support

When applying for this option applicants should supply letters of support from 3 or more local schools or care service providers (such as care homes, mental health care providers).

The letters must show a desire to visit the farm for educational experiences.

#### Carrying out visits

It is acceptable to use all or part of the farm for visits. Neighbouring land can be used if it offers additional benefit.

Visits should aim to last at least 2 hours and involve at least 6 attendees. There is no upper restriction on visitor numbers or length of time a visit lasts.



These groups and individuals are eligible for visits:

- schools and other educational establishments for children from birth to the end of Key Stage 4 (age 16)
- care farming parties or individuals

Parties should not be split into smaller groups and claims presented for each group. Parties can be split for tours, but it is only possible to claim one visit for the total number of visitors on the holding at the same time.

This is still the case if the visitors come from different establishments.

### Further information

The following websites have useful information on how to host a farm visit:

- **Visit My Farm**, <http://www.visitmyfarm.org/> has resources for land managers to support educational visits, ideas for successful visits, health and safety information and suggestions on how to maximise visitor numbers and enjoyment.
- **Care Farming UK**, <http://www.carefarminguk.org/> offers support and resources on the therapeutic use of farms.
- **Farming and Countryside Education**, <http://www.face-online.org.uk/> educates children and young people about food and farming in a sustainable countryside.

**Linking Environment and Farming**, <http://www.leafuk.org/leaf/home.eb> works to build public understanding of food and farming.

# Management of species-rich grassland (GS6) Higher Tier

## £182 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole and part parcel

Only on grassland priority habitat.

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the requirements of the option can still be carried out)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will maintain and enhance priority grasslands. It will increase the number and frequency of important plant species, with most wildflowers in bloom over the summer. Many other priority species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats, will benefit, and buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- maintain or increase the presence and abundance of high value plant species
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing, hay cutting, or a mixture of both
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use very little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in your agreement
- control undesirable plants (these can be specified in the agreement)

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely that agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed, unless agreed with Natural England
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb breeding birds or damage nests

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis, to be completed in the final agreement year and results submitted with final claim
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- bag returns, if an agreed wildfowl strategy is in place

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- a standard soil analysis, including analysis of organic matter by loss on ignition
- a map of the existing drainage system
- grassland eligibility documentation
- map of species rich grassland
- photograph showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out

If there is scrub on the site, send photographs showing the extent of it. Also send photographs showing the extent of scrub or bracken on historic or archaeological features.

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 - Management of hedgerows
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

For successful management, in most cases the following will be needed:

- appropriate livestock (which will often be cattle), over which the agreement holder has full control
- machinery to carry out management requirements such as hay cutting
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches and scrub
- capital works to support this option (e.g. to oversow with additional plant species, use option FM2 - Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species)

Upland calcareous and other very extensively managed grassland, especially in large parcels, may not be accepted for this option. Such grassland may be eligible for other options, such as GS13 - Management of grassland for target features.

# Restoration towards species-rich grassland (GS7) Higher Tier

## £145 per ha

### How long the option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part-parcel

Only on parcels of grassland that have high or medium potential for being restored to grassland priority habitat.

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included in this option if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England)
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the applicant is still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will restore grasslands that have the potential to become priority grasslands. It will increase the number and frequency of important plant species. Many other priority species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats, will also benefit. Buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- increase the presence and abundance of high value plant species, for example by deliberately introducing new species
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing, hay cutting, or a mixture of both
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use very little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these can be specified in the agreement)

A detailed timetable will need to be agreed setting out how the grassland will be restored and the timetable to achieve it. This should include details of how seeds or plants will be introduced, identifying the source of the material and the varieties and quantities to be used. It should also set out how the grassland will be managed after the plants or seeds are introduced.

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holder will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed, unless agreed with Natural England
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb breeding birds or damage nests

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis, to be completed in the final agreement year and results submitted with final claim
- soil analysis results
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- a standard soil analysis, including analysis of organic matter by loss on ignition, with their application
- a map of the existing drainage system
- photographs showing the extent of scrub or bracken on any historic or archaeological features must be taken
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 - Management of hedgerows
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### How to choose a site

This option works best on infertile soils where the soil phosphorus index (as shown by soil analysis) is low and where the sward is not dominated by aggressive plant species or injurious weeds. It is best used where it will extend an existing area of priority habitat.

### How to manage the site

The management for this option will be tailored to the site, but in most cases the following will be needed:

- appropriate livestock (which will often be cattle), over which the agreement holder has full control
- machinery to allow management requirements such as hay cutting to be carried out
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches and scrub
- capital works to support this option (e.g. to increase the number of plant species, use option FM2 - Major preparatory work for priority habitats and priority species)
- change of hay cutting and grazing patterns, at least in the short term
- Upland calcareous and other very extensively managed grassland, especially in large parcels, may not be accepted for this option. Such grassland may be eligible for other options, such as GS13 - Management of grassland for target features.

Once the grassland is restored to priority habitat, it may be eligible for option GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland.

# Creation of species-rich grassland (GS8) Higher Tier

## £267 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or a part parcel

Only on arable, set-aside or temporary grassland that has high or medium potential for the creation of priority habitat (if it has medium potential written support from a Natural England specialist is required).

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England)
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the requirements of the option can still be carried out)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will create priority grasslands and establish a wide range of important plant species. Many other priority species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats, will also benefit, and buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- establish a flower rich grassland in the first year
- maintain it as permanent grassland
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing, hay cutting, or a mixture of both
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use very little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these can be specified in the agreement)

A detailed implementation timetable must be agreed to create the grassland. This should set out how it will be created, including details of the varieties and quantities of seed or plant material to be used and where they'll come from, and how the grassland will be managed after the seeds or plants are introduced.

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed after the grassland has been successfully established, unless agreed with Natural England
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb breeding birds or damage nests

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis, to be completed in the final agreement year and results submitted with final claim
- soil analysis results
- inputs used

- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photograph of showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- confirmation that eligibility requirements have been met
- a standard soil analysis, including analysis of organic matter by loss on ignition
- a map of the existing drainage system

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 - Management of hedgerows
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

**The following section gives advice on how to carry out this option successfully but may not be specified in the prescriptions.**

### How to choose a site

This option works best on infertile soils where the soil phosphorus index (as shown by the soil analysis) is low, and the sward and soil seedbank are not dominated by aggressive plant species or injurious weeds.

Species-rich grassland can sometimes be created by natural regeneration (possibly by adding extra plant species) or, much more commonly, through cultivating and sowing an agreed seed mix.

This option will normally be targeted at sites that are next to or close to existing species-rich grasslands.

### How to manage the site

The requirements for this option will be tailored to the site, but in most cases the following will be needed:

- appropriate livestock (which will often be cattle), over which the agreement holder has full control
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches and scrub
- capital works to support this option (eg to increase the number of plant species, use option FM2 - Major preparatory work for priority habitats and priority species)

Upland calcareous and other very extensively managed grassland, especially in large parcels, may not be accepted for this option. Such grassland may be eligible for other options, such as:

- GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features

Once the grassland has become a priority habitat, it may be eligible for option GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland



# Management of wet grassland for breeding waders (GS9)

£264 per ha

Higher Tier

## Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on permanent grassland that is one of the following:

- coastal or floodplain grazing marsh identified as priority habitat
- other grassland identified as habitat for breeding waders

The grassland must already support breeding waders or have high potential for being restored for them.

It must also meet one of the following conditions:

- a recommended fertiliser management system is currently being followed to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- a recommended fertiliser management system will be adopted within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

## Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the applicant is still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub, at the discretion of Natural England

## How this option will benefit the environment

It will provide habitat in wet grassland for breeding wading birds. Fields will have wet areas and suitable sward conditions throughout the winter and spring and into the early summer. Waders will be able to nest and, in most years, successfully fledge their young.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- provide the correct sward conditions for the target species by grazing, mainly with cattle, in accordance with the stocking calendar agreed with Natural England
- manage livestock during the breeding season to reduce the risk of them trampling nests
- provide wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) for waders to feed (these areas will need to be kept wet into the early summer, usually by holding high ditch water levels)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely that agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow or roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- bag returns, if an agreed wildfowl strategy is in place



On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs showing the extent of scrub or bracken on any historic or archaeological features on the site (if present)
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- a map of the existing drainage system
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is being followed or that the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

The following supplements may also be used with this option, but only in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of Natural England:

- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) containing wading birds
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage Board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service if historic and archaeological features are present

Sites which may be unsuitable for this option include:

- sites with botanical interest, where hydrological changes could damage plant communities
- washlands and other areas that flood during the wader breeding season

# Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl (GS10) Higher Tier

## £157 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on permanent grassland that is one of the following:

- coastal or floodplain grazing marsh identified as priority habitat
- other grassland identified as habitat for wintering waders and wildfowl

The grassland must already support wintering wildfowl and waders or have high potential for being enhanced to support them.

It must also meet one of the following conditions:

- a recommended fertiliser management system is currently being used to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- a recommended fertiliser management system will be adopted within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the applicant is still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub, at the discretion of the delivery body

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will provide habitat in wet grassland for wintering wildfowl and wading birds. Fields will have wet areas throughout the winter, attracting wading birds and wildfowl, which will be able to feed and roost undisturbed.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage the land by grazing, and possibly cutting
- provide areas of standing water and wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) to attract waders and wildfowl through the winter months (ditch water levels may need to be held high to achieve this)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow or roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- bag returns, if an agreed wildfowl strategy is in place

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs showing the extent of scrub or bracken on any historic or archaeological features on the site (if present)
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- a map of the existing drainage system
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is being followed or that the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OR2 - Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

The following supplements may also be used with this option, but only in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of Natural England:

- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS ON HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) that have wintering waders and wildfowl as interest features
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader and wildfowl populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service if historic and archaeological features are present

Sites which may be unsuitable for this option include:

- sites with an unreliable water supply
- improved, intensively managed grassland for geese, which is cut for silage and receives more than 50kg per ha of inorganic nitrogen fertiliser
- sites with botanical interest, where hydrological changes could damage plant communities

# Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders (GS11) Higher Tier

## £406 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on parcels that have been in arable, fallow or temporary grass in the last 5 years and have high potential for being restored to habitat for breeding waders.

It must also meet one of the following conditions:

- a recommended fertiliser management system is currently being followed to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- a recommended fertiliser management system will be adopted within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the applicant is still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub, at the discretion of Natural England

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will create wet grassland for breeding wading birds from arable or temporary grassland. Fields will have well-established swards, with wet areas throughout the winter and spring and into the early summer. Waders will be able to nest and, in most years, successfully fledge their young.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- establish a suitable sward and manage it by grazing, mainly with cattle, in accordance with the stocking calendar agreed with Natural England
- manage livestock during the breeding season to reduce the risk of them trampling nests
- provide wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) for waders to feed (these areas will need to be kept wet into the early summer, usually by holding high ditch water levels)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland after successfully establishing it, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow and roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- a map of the existing drainage system
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is being followed or that the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

The following supplements may also be used with this option, but only in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of Natural England:

- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option*

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) that have wading birds as interest features
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service if historic and archaeological features are present

Sites which may be unsuitable for this option include:

- washlands
- other areas that flood during the wader breeding season

# Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl (GS12) Higher Tier

## £310 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on parcels that have been in arable, fallow or temporary grass in the last 5 years. They must also have high potential for being restored to habitat for wintering waders and wildfowl.

It must also meet one of the following conditions:

- a recommended fertiliser management system is currently being used to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- a recommended fertiliser management system will be adopted within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the applicant is still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub, at the discretion of the delivery body

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will create wet grassland for wintering wildfowl and wading birds from arable or temporary grassland. Fields will have well-established swards, with wet areas throughout the winter. Wading birds and wildfowl will be able to feed and roost undisturbed.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- establish a suitable sward and manage it by grazing, and possibly cutting
- provide areas of standing water and wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) to attract waders and wildfowl through the winter months (ditch water levels may need to be held high to achieve this)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland after successfully establishing it, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow or roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work



- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- bag returns, if an agreed wildfowl strategy is in place

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- a map of the existing drainage system
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is being followed or that the applicant qualifies as a low intensity farmer

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

The following supplements may also be used with this option, but only in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of Natural England:

- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) that have wintering waders and wildfowl as interest features
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader and wildfowl populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service if historic and archaeological features are present

Sites where the water supply is unreliable are not suitable for this option.

# Management of grassland for target features (GS13) Higher Tier

## £90 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on grassland that meets both of the following requirements:

- it has moderate or low potential for being restored to priority habitat
- it is clearly associated with a species or feature that would benefit from focused management

Alternatively, it can be used on priority coastal and floodplain grazing marsh that meets both of the following requirements:

- it is not targeted for the wet grassland options (GS9, GS10, GS11 and GS12)
- it is clearly associated with a species or feature that is targeted by Natural England and that would benefit from focused management

### Where this option cannot be used

On grassland that is classed as grassland priority habitat (with the exception of priority coastal and floodplain grazing marsh)

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England (larger areas may be permitted on coastal and floodplain grazing marsh)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the requirements of the option can still be carried out)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will maintain or increase the quantity of the targeted habitat, species or features. Many priority species such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats will also benefit. Buried archaeological features won't be disturbed.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- maintain or increase the presence, quality or abundance of the targeted feature
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing or cutting
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these will be specified in the agreement)

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed the grassland, unless agreed with Natural England
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests



## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis, to be completed in the final agreement year and results submitted with final claim
- soil analysis results
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a standard soil analysis, including analysis of organic matter by loss on ignition
- a map of the existing drainage system
- if there is scrub on the site, photographs showing the extent of it
- if there is scrub or bracken on historic or archaeological features, photographs of the extent of it
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 - Management of hedgerows
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully, but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### Species and features this option can be used for

The option can be used for a wide range of species or other features, such as:

- priority species
- scarce plants
- bumblebees, butterflies or other targeted invertebrates

- birds or other targeted vertebrates
- feeding areas for over-wintering geese in target locations that are free from disturbance
- areas that have breeding waders but that are not suitable for option GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- buried historic or archaeological features

### **What is needed**

The management of land under this option can be very varied, but it is likely to need:

- appropriate livestock, over which the agreement-holder has full control
- machinery to carry out management requirements, such as cutting
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches
- capital works to support this option (eg to oversow with additional plant species, use option FM2 - Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species)

# Creation of grassland for target features (GS14) Higher Tier

## £253 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on arable, temporary or former set-aside grassland that has low or moderate potential for the creation of grassland priority habitat.

### Features that can be included in this option

It can be used on the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England (larger areas may be permitted on coastal and floodplain grazing marsh)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as the requirements of the option can still be carried out)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will establish a suitable sward with a range of grass, legume and wildflower species. This will protect and enhance the targeted feature, as well as benefiting a range of other species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats. Buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to establish a grassy sward with a range of grass, legume and wildflower species in the first year of the agreement.

Once this is established:

- maintain it as permanent grassland
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing or cutting
- maintain a continuous cover over historic features
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these will be specified in the agreement)

A detailed implementation timetable for the creation of the grassland will also need to be agreed. This should set out how it will be created, including details of the varieties and quantities of seed or plant material to be used and where they will come from. It should also set out how the sward will be managed once it has been established.

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed the grassland after successfully establishing it, unless agreed in writing with Natural England

- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis, to be completed in the final agreement year and results submitted with final claim
- soil analysis results
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a standard soil analysis, including analysis of organic matter by loss on ignition
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- a map of the existing drainage system
- photograph of current scrub extent

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 - Management of hedgerows
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully, but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

#### Species and features this option can be used for

It can be used for a wide range of species or other features, such as:

- priority species
- scarce plants
- bumblebees, butterflies or other targeted invertebrates
- birds or other targeted vertebrates
- feeding areas for over-wintering geese in target locations that are free from disturbance
- buried archaeological features

Clear evidence will be needed that the feature is present on the site or close to it. Applicants should discuss the suitability of the site with their adviser and agree what management is needed.

### **What is needed**

The management of land under this option can be very varied, but it is likely to need:

- appropriate livestock, over which the agreement-holder has full control
- machinery to carry out management requirements, such as cutting
- consideration of how best to manage associated features, such as ditches
- capital works to support this option (eg to oversow with additional plant species, use option FM2 - Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species)

After the agreement term, the grassland may be eligible for option GS13 - Management of grassland for target features.

# Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation (HS7) Higher Tier

## £440 per ha

### Where to use this option

Only:

- on functioning water meadows that are managed using traditional practices, i.e. where irrigation is achieved through a system of inlet and outlet channels
- where management has written support from the Environment Agency

### Where this option cannot be used

On meadows:

- that flood naturally and do not have control structures such as sluices and hatches to regulate water levels
- where water cannot be controlled - water needs to flow evenly across the meadow at up to 25mm in depth when drowned

### How this option will benefit the environment

It protects heritage by conserving historic water meadow systems and keeping them in a stable condition.

It maintains the demanding traditional management needed on both 'bedwork' and 'catch' water meadows. It also maintains habitat and water quality.

If successful there will be:

- a well-managed grass sward with no scrub developing
- a working water meadow system with structurally sound water control features
- maintenance carried out using traditional materials and methods

It will also help conserve the character of the farm and traditional land-use patterns.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will usually need to:

- float or drown the meadow for an agreed period of time each year
- maintain the gutters, carriers or channels to encourage an even film of water approximately 25mm deep to flow over the sward
- maintain and repair the water control structures such as sluices, weirs and hatches, keeping a record of the work
- manage the meadow by grazing or hay cutting once the land has dried out
- use very little or no manures, fertilisers, pesticides or supplementary feed
- control undesirable plants

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- harrow or roll
- work on the gutters, carriers or channels during late spring and summer
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- remove, replace or relocate historic structures

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a [structures maintenance record](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-hs6-and-hs7-structural-maintenance-plan-and-record-forms), <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/countryside-stewardship-hs6-and-hs7-structural-maintenance-plan-and-record-forms> using the template and:
  - at least once a year, carry out and record the results of an inspection of the water body and associated features
  - complete the record with a list of items needing attention and a record of repair and maintenance work that has been carried out
  - photographs - before and after shots of all maintenance works and minor repairs that have been carried out to be submitted with the final claim

- stock grazing records
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

For the final claim, agreement holders will need to submit photographs of the current state of the water meadow and its structural, historic and archaeological features.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the current state of the water meadow and its structural, historic and archaeological features
- a copy of the Environment Agency written approval and any necessary consents
- a map of existing tracks and routes

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 – Difficult sites supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### Carrying out maintenance

Routine maintenance work should be carried out to protect structures and features to ensure they survive.

Annual maintenance should be carried out to spot and prevent the start of serious structural problems by carrying out annual maintenance. This should help to avoid expensive restoration in the future.

Typical maintenance work may include:

- inspecting the water control structures such as sluices, weirs and hatches to make sure they are all working properly
- clearing carriers, leats, gutters and drains of vegetation and silt
- carrying out minor repairs to sluices, hatches, weirs, bridges, aqueducts, culverts and dams

Historic fabric should be kept as far as possible and not over-restored.

Field operations and stocking should not damage the soil structure, e.g. by allowing livestock to poach the ground.

### Further information

Information on the location of scheduled monuments, registered parks and gardens, registered battlefields and listed buildings, as well as undesignated historic and archaeological features can be found on:

- the Historic England annual **Heritage at Risk register**, <https://www.historicengland.org.uk/advice/heritage-at-risk>, <http://magic.defra.gov.uk/> - this identifies historic environment features at high risk loss or damage
- the **MAGIC website**, <http://magic.defra.gov.uk/> for information in map form
- the **Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England** website <http://www.myshinedata.org.uk/>
- the county **historic environment record**, <http://www.heritagegateway.org.uk/gateway/>

Also read about **Conserving historic water meadows** on the Historic England website. <http://historicengland.org.uk/images-books/publications/conserving-historic-water-meadows/>



# Management of lowland heathland (LH1) Higher Tier

## £274 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only on lowland heathland priority habitat; this can include areas of acid grassland mixed with heathland

### Where this option cannot be used:

- on extensive grassland areas (without heather or dwarf shrubs) as these should be put into a relevant grassland option, such as:
  - GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland
  - GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- on upland heathland over 300m above sea level and within the moorland line and the severely disadvantaged area

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bare ground
- open water
- scrub

### How this option will benefit the environment

It creates a diverse mosaic of vegetation, allowing all heathland types (such as wet or dry heath, transitional heaths, acidic mires and coastal heaths) to flourish. This includes pioneer heath and bare ground, which benefits rarer invertebrates, birds, reptiles and plants.

If successful there will be heathland areas with a diverse mosaic structure, including undisturbed bare ground and vegetation in all stages of its life cycle.

The cover of undesirable species will be low and species that increase when undermanaged (bracken, trees, dense grass tussocks) kept under control. Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support (such as nightjar, woodlark, smooth snake and sand lizard, where within their range) are common.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- create a wide range of heather ages and structure through appropriate management (grazing, burning and/or cutting)
- provide bare ground cover between 1% and 10%
- maintain tree and scrub cover below 15%
- maintain the full range of age classes of Western or European gorse
- manage bracken so that cover is less than 10% in dense canopy

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- create bare ground on historic or archaeological features
- use fertilisers or manures
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- carry out supplementary feeding
- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives

## Keeping records

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans [see the Forestry Commission's guide, http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf). Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will also be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Photographs of the existing bracken

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

Heathland is characteristic of acidic and nutrient-poor soils. Heathland sites should be managed to keep their ecological value, which depends on an open and diverse vegetation structure.

Sensitive, sustainable management will be needed, using a combination of appropriate grazing, cutting and removal and/or burning. In some cases herbicide application may be needed (such as for some scrub or bracken control).

Larger sites will often also include areas of acid grassland or wetland habitats - the transitional zones between heathland and such habitats are particularly valuable. If a heathland site is neglected or poorly managed, it is likely to lead to bare ground disappearing and an increase in cover of scrub, bracken, gorse, invasive grasses or secondary woodland.

The removal or disturbance of top soil may be needed, to create or maintain some features, such as bare ground. Do not create bare ground on historic or archaeological features. Such features are best protected by implementing an appropriate grazing or cutting regime, and/or preventing scrub and bracken growth.

**Further information**

Symes, N. & Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy

# Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland (LH2) Higher Tier

## £184 per ha

### How long the option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel  
Non-rotational  
Only on lowland heathland that has established tree cover over most of its area

### Where this option cannot be used

- on areas of heathland with scattered trees and scrub - use LH1 - Management of lowland heathland, to restore existing heathland habitat
- on woodland being cleared on grassland areas (without dwarf shrubs) - use a relevant grassland option

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bare ground
- open water
- scrub

### How this option will benefit the environment

It re-establishes lowland heathland on forested land or land recently (since 1900) colonised by woodland.

Once trees are felled and removed and extensive areas of sandy soil are exposed, heathland areas should develop over the first 2-3 years. The area will have a tree cover under 15%, with a diverse mosaic structure and composition, including undisturbed bare ground and varied heathland vegetation types.

The cover of undesirable species will be low and vegetation that increases when undermanaged (bracken, scrub, dense grass tussocks) should be kept under control.

Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support (such as nightjar, woodlark, smooth snake or sand lizard) will successfully colonise the site, if within their range.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- remove trees and scrub, along with the accumulated organic litter layer when it's deeper than 5cm
- graze or cut to manage the colonising heathland vegetation, leading to a balanced range and distribution of dwarf shrub age classes
- follow set times for grazing or cutting
- carry out hydrological restoration measures, if needed, such as damming ditches or blocking drainage, if appropriate
- create or maintain between 1% to 10% of bare ground cover – do not create bare ground on historic or archaeological features
- maintain tree or scrub cover below 15%
- maintain the full range of age classes of Western or European gorse
- manage bracken so that cover is less than 10%

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely that agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- apply fertilisers, manures or lime
- carry out supplementary feeding
- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives

## Keeping records

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans [see the Forestry Commission's guide, \[http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf\]\(http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf\)](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf). Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Photographs of the existing bracken

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### Tree removal and burning

Some areas where trees are well established will look more like woodland than heathland before management takes place. Remove felled trees from the site – but some wood can be retained on the site as a wildlife habitat if Natural England has given permission.

Thin branches and twigs can be burned on site, but do not burn in species-rich grassland, anthills or on other ecological or archaeological features. Clean the area as soon as possible after burning. Control nettles, thistle, dock, ragwort and other weed species as the site regenerates.

### Site maintenance

Supplementary seed or heather brash from neighbouring sites may be needed to help heathland establish if there is not enough seed in the soil. Heathland features should be maintained and encouraged as they develop. Heathland sites have acidic and nutrient-poor soils and need active management to keep their

ecological value. Such management will usually combine grazing, cutting and removal and/or burning. Larger sites will often also include areas of acid grassland or wetland habitats, with the transitional zones between heathland and such habitats being of particular value.

The removal or disturbance of top soil may be needed, to create or maintain some features, such as bare ground. Do not create bare ground on historic or archaeological features. Such features are best protected by implementing an appropriate grazing or cutting regime, and/or preventing scrub and bracken growth.

#### **Further information**

The **Forestry Commission**, <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/england> should be consulted when developing this option. They will advise on the need for a felling licence or an environmental impact assessment.

Further information is available from:

- Symes, N. & Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy
- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](http://www.arc-trust.org/reptiles-2.html) at the Arc Trust <http://www.arc-trust.org/reptiles-2.html>

# Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland (LH3)

## £517 per ha

Higher Tier

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

On the following land if soil nutrient levels are low (a soil test will be needed to confirm this when applying, see below):

- arable
- temporary grassland
- improved permanent grassland

The best site is likely to be on well-drained sandy soil, former heathland that, ideally, has only been intensively managed for a few years. Sites are ideally near existing heathlands, so as to increase their extent and decrease fragmentation.

### Where this option cannot be used

- on land that has previously been granted 10 years agri-environment funding (such as Higher Level Stewardship) for the creation of lowland heathland
- on areas that are better suited to grassland creation options (where those options should be used instead)
- unsuitable sites are likely to:
  - have a high pH with high (above 2) residual N, P and K indices
  - have been intensively managed for many years
  - be small, isolated areas away from existing heathland
  - have never been heathland in the past

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bare ground
- open water
- scrub

### How this option will benefit the environment

Lowland heathland will be created, which includes mosaics with lowland acid grassland, on arable or improved grassland sites that have largely lost their heathland seed bank.

Heathland species should normally start to appear within 1 to 3 years. The heathland areas in this option will develop a diverse mosaic structure and composition, including undisturbed bare ground and varied vegetation of different ages.

The cover of undesirable species should be low and vegetation that increases when undermanaged (such as bracken, trees, dense grass tussocks) will need to be kept under control. Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support (such as nightjar, woodlark, smooth snake or sand lizard) will colonise the site, if it's within their range.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- where necessary, carry out hydrological restoration measures, such as reversing drainage on potential wet heath areas by damming ditches or blocking drains

- encourage colonisation by using heather seed (directly or in brush or capsules) or cuttings, preferably from a donor site nearby
- graze or cut the colonising heathland vegetation at set times
- manage undesirable species, such as thistles, willowherbs, bramble and bracken, to keep cover under 10%

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- apply fertilisers, manures or lime
- carry out supplementary feeding
- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives

### Keeping records

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans [see the Forestry Commission's guide, <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf>](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf). Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

When applying, a standard soil analysis including organic matter (by loss on ignition) will be needed - see [Soil sampling for habitat recreation and restoration. <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/31015>](http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/31015)

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grass
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*



Take an integrated approach to heathland restoration. This includes considering landscape character and visual effects, archaeology and wildlife. Boundaries with nearby land uses will need to be considered, as will possible scrub clearance, fencing and public access issues.

### Further information

Get further information from:

- Symes, N. & Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy
- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](http://www.arc-trust.org/reptiles-2.html) at the Arc Trust <http://www.arc-trust.org/reptiles-2.html>

# Difficult sites supplement (SP1) Higher Tier

## £62 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only in combination with a land management option on whole parcels if either of these apply:

- where grazing management has been abandoned or is in danger of abandonment
- on parcels less than 1ha in area with stockproof traditional boundaries, including banks, hedges, walls or wet ditches (gateways must be less than 3.6m wide)

### Where this supplement cannot be used

With UP3 - Management of moorland

### The Isles of Scilly

In the Isles of Scilly it can be used in combination with a land management option on whole parcels if any of these apply:

- on arable land up to and including 0.4ha in area
- on arable fields up to and including 5ha in area that are sub-divided into small bulb fields no bigger than 0.4ha, and are bounded by granite walls or salt tolerant shrub hedges ("fences")
- on pastoral fields up to and including 2ha in area

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports the management of particularly difficult sites. It also retains small fields and their locally characteristic boundary pattern.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep boundaries and, where required, reintroduce grazing.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- map identifying access gateways
- confirmation that the eligibility requirements are met

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- GS15 – Haymaking supplement
- GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement
- GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP3 – Bracken control supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP9 – Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.

This supplement is available at the discretion of Natural England on sites that need an exceptionally high and sustained time and labour input.

Examples include sites:

- with very poor accessibility, remoteness or isolation, where it is very difficult to walk livestock or to transport livestock to the site
- with hazards to personnel and livestock within or next to the site, such as:
  - cliffs or extremely steep slopes or screes
  - sparse riverside land
  - islands
  - mineshafts
  - landslips
  - subsidence
  - gullies
- with hazards to livestock, such as:
  - poisonous vegetation from which stock cannot be excluded
  - regular disturbance by dogs
  - urban fringe locations
  - where it is very difficult to locate stock within a site for welfare checks

### Where this supplement cannot be used

The supplement is not intended for:

- mechanical vegetation control - supplements such as GS15 - Haymaking supplement or a capital item are more appropriate
- sites currently grazed to acceptable levels for nature conservation
- sites where grazing is not secured for the lifetime of the agreement
- small parcels which are not stockproof or are not managed individually

# Raised water level supplement (SP2) Higher Tier

## £127 per ha

### How long this supplement lasts

This supplement lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this supplement

Only in combination with the following land management options:

- GS6 Management of species-rich grassland
- GS7 Restoration towards species-rich grassland
- GS8 Creation of species-rich grassland
- UP2 Management of rough grazing for birds

The supplement may be used with the following options in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of Natural England:

- GS9 Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS13 Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 Creation of grassland for target features
- WT6 Management of reedbed
- WT7 Creation of reedbed
- WT8 Management of fen
- WT9 Creation of fen
- WT10 Management of lowland raised bog

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for raising or maintaining water levels in ditches and adjacent land.

Suitable water levels will be maintained on the option the supplement's applied to.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to raise and maintain high water levels using suitable water control structures, or maintain existing in-field wetness.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- consents or permissions connected with this work

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement

- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement
- WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.

### Pick the right location

This supplement can be used when the cost of raising or maintaining water levels is not covered by the underlying option.

The supplement usually requires active management of water levels. However, naturally wet sites (where groundwater levels are naturally high or where levels are managed by a third party, such as the local internal drainage board) may also be suitable.

To justify the supplement the site wetness should both:

- be appropriate for the habitat or historic feature and any targeted species present
- lead to increased management costs which are not accounted for by the option (such as difficulties in sward management or livestock health implications)

When water levels are being actively managed, the land levels, topography, soils and underlying geology should be suitable for water level management. The site, either alone or combined with a group of sites, should form a natural hydrological unit.

Water management structures (such as sluices or bunds) may be needed to separate the site from neighbouring land - these may be available as capital items.

### Unsuitable sites

Unsuitable sites include those where:

- the base option already includes the costs of water level management (such as the wet grassland and wetland options), unless the supplement is approved by a Natural England specialist
- the supplement increases the risk of flooding or waterlogging elsewhere
- the water supply lacks the quantity or quality to achieve the objectives
- raising water levels would damage priority habitats or species, or features of archaeological, historic or landscape value, unless approved mitigation measures can be taken
- the proposal would damage third party land or buildings, infrastructure or other assets unless approved mitigation measures are taken
- there are conflicts with public access or other uses of the area that cannot be resolved

### Consents and permissions

Applicants should always consult the local land drainage authority about changes to water levels or restoration works that affect water courses or the floodplain. This may be the local internal drainage board, the Environment Agency or the local authority.

Planning consent may be needed, such as for flood defence bank removal, or for the installation of bunds or embankments within the floodplain.

Applicants may also need the local planning authority's permission to divert a public right of way.

# Bracken control supplement (SP3) Higher Tier

## £153 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Whole and part-parcel

Only in combination with a land management option. The most common such options include:

- LH1 - Management of lowland heathland
- LH2 - Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland
- LH3 - Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland
- UP1 - Enclosed rough grazing
- UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds
- UP3 - Management of moorland

This supplement can also be used to control bracken on other options, such as on dry grassland, woodland or sand dunes.

### Where this supplement cannot be used

On the same area in the same year as the bracken control capital items:

- SB4 - Chemical bracken control
- SB5 - Mechanical bracken control

This supplement would normally be used in subsequent years, as a follow-up to these items.

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It controls the spread of, or removes, existing dense stands of bracken. This will maintain or restore biodiversity value and protect archaeological sites.

If successful the underlying vegetation will develop and spread, and will develop a diverse mosaic structure and composition, including undisturbed bare ground and varied vegetation types.

Successfully managing the remaining vegetation (usually by grazing or cutting) will reduce the chances of bracken spreading back. Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support will expand or even colonise the site.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- control bracken so that cover is reduced to a set proportion by a set date
- only carry out chemical control on specifically identified areas
- use temporary grazing controls to protect vegetation regeneration
- graze to break up litter beds and damage young fronds to offer extra bracken control
- control any re-infestation during the term of the agreement
- carry out specific follow up cutting or grazing management tailored to their site

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a map of the extent of bracken
- the Environment Agency's consent if this is within a water catchment area

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement
- WD9 - Livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

# Control of invasive plant species supplement (SP4) Higher Tier

## £324 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Whole and part-parcel

Only in combination with an appropriate annual management option

### Where this supplement cannot be used

For rush control

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports the active management and eradication of particularly severe infestations of invasive non-native species that are damaging a feature of interest, such as:

- Himalayan balsam
- Japanese knotweed
- floating pennywort and other invasive aquatic plants

Active management is needed to maintain or restore wildlife value or protect archaeological features.

If successful there should be a reduction in cover and density of non-native invasive species. Native plants and animals will re-establish the area cleared, returning a more natural balance to the habitat.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holder are likely to need to:

- control the invasive species so that cover is reduced to a set proportion by a set date
- only carry out chemical control on specifically identified areas
- use temporary grazing controls to protect vegetation regeneration
- control any re-infestation during the term of the agreement
- carry out specific follow up cutting or grazing management tailored to their site

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- CT6 – Coastal vegetation management supplement
- GS15 – Haymaking supplement
- GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement
- GS17 – Lenient grazing supplement
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- SW14 – Nil fertiliser supplement
- UP4 – Management of moorland vegetation supplement
- UP5 – Moorland re-wetting supplement
- UP6 – Upland livestock exclusion supplement



- WD9 – Livestock exclusion supplement
- WT11 – Wetland cutting supplement
- WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.

### Non-native invasive species

Invasive non-native plants are species that:

- have been introduced to the UK either intentionally or unintentionally
- spread and damage the environment, the economy and health

### Where this supplement can be used

Use this supplement when aiming to do more than just control an invasive species' spread and, if feasible, eradicate it. Exact details will be agreed with Natural England.

This supplement can also be used to control non-native invasive species in marginal areas (such as riverbanks, riparian habitats, ditches, channels, field margins, corners and ponds). This can only be done if there is a Countryside Stewardship land management option on that land parcel.

### Where this supplement cannot be used

- to control [weeds listed in the Weeds Act 1959](http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/Eliz2/7-8/54/contents), <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/Eliz2/7-8/54/contents>
- to control bracken and gorse - use the appropriate supplement
- for complying with cross compliance requirements
- for rush infestations - if this is on land under a Countryside Stewardship option then apply for GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement

### Controlling non-native invasive species

Invasive species can be controlled through a range of methods, including:

- containing a species in a limited area
- preventing (or slowing) its spread
- localised population reduction or eradication in particular areas

Alternative methods include cutting by hand or cutting mechanically, applying herbicide or an alternative agreed method, depending on the plant being controlled.

If the applicant has permission to spray herbicide make sure that the person spraying has the relevant qualifications and certifications.

When controlling and disposing of invasive non-native plants on land, specific legal responsibilities must be complied with, including:

- spraying with herbicide
- cutting and burning
- burying invasive plant material
- disposing of invasive plant and contaminated soil off site

### Further information

Get more information on invasive weeds from:

- the guide to [harmful weeds and invasive, non-native plants](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/prevent-the-spread-of-harmful-invasive-and-non-native-plants), <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/prevent-the-spread-of-harmful-invasive-and-non-native-plants>
- guidance on the [Wildlife and Countryside Act and landowners' responsibilities](https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/69205/wildlife-countryside-act.pdf), [https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment\\_data/file/69205/wildlife-countryside-act.pdf](https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/69205/wildlife-countryside-act.pdf)

# Shepherding supplement (SP5) Higher Tier

## £7 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Part-parcel

Only on land where shepherding needs to be introduced, reintroduced or where significant changes to current practices are needed. It must be combined with one of the following options:

- CT1 - Management of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle
- CT2 - Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland
- GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland
- GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland
- GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland
- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features
- LH1 - Management of lowland heathland
- LH2 - Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland
- LH3 - Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland
- UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds
- UP3 - Management of moorland
- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful there will be:

- improvements in the quality of vegetation
- overgrazing reduced in some areas and increased in others
- better habitats for birds, mammals and insects
- less damage to archaeological features and vulnerable soils and less poaching (trampling)
- more suitable conditions for threatened species to thrive
- improved visibility of historic and archaeological features

### REQUIREMENTS

- keep records of shepherding or herding activities on the agreed area

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- shepherding calendar submitted annually with the claim

You should be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- GS15 – Haymaking supplement
- GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement
- GS17 – Lenient grazing supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP3 – Bracken control supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- UP4 – Management of moorland vegetation supplement
- UP5 – Moorland re-wetting supplement
- UP6 – Upland livestock exclusion supplement
- WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.*

### **Pick the right location**

Only use this supplement in areas where it has been agreed with Natural England that shepherding is needed to help improve the option land.

Use mineral licks or supplementary feed in agreed locations to help with stock management

Do not use this supplement where:

- boundaries are not proofed against livestock and they cannot be controlled effectively
- there is little or no shepherding available in the area
- the site is not grazed
- there is already a local practice, custom or regulation in place for shepherding

# Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly (SP7) Higher Tier

## £279 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only:

- in the Isles of Scilly
- with a land management option where cattle grazing will help achieve the option's goals

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for the introduction of conservation grazing on the Isles of Scilly on land that is not currently grazed by cattle.

If successful there will be:

- a more varied sward structure that will increase wildlife diversity
- better control of scrub, bracken and coarse vegetation
- better grazing of wet areas and difficult sites such as steep slopes

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to graze cattle on the land with the option. Grazing needs to follow the stocking calendar agreed with Natural England.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

Applicants will need to send a stocking calendar agreed with Natural England with their application.

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- CT6 – Coastal vegetation management supplement
- GS15 – Haymaking supplement
- GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP3 – Bracken control supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WD9 – Livestock exclusion supplement – scrub and successional areas
- WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement

# Native breeds at risk supplement (SP8) Higher Tier

## £94 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only on land in combination with a land management option. The species and breed used for grazing must be confirmed in writing by Natural England as being appropriate for achieving the option's aims.

**Native breed at risk (NBAR)** <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/uk-native-animal-breeds-at-risk-list> grazing livestock must be used that are either:

- registered pedigree purebreeding animals
- genetically-provable purebred progeny of registered pedigree purebreeding parents of the same eligible NBAR breed

### Where this supplement cannot be used

- on common land and shared grazing areas
- in combination with SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for the conservation of genetic diversity in native breeds at risk.

The number of NBAR stock on the farm will increase or be maintained as agreed. This makes sure that the breeds will not become extinct in England.

## REQUIREMENTS

- state how many registered pedigree purebreeding NBAR livestock they will be keeping, or agreeing to keep, by the end of the agreement
- graze specific parcels with the breeds at risk in accordance with a stocking calendar

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a monthly record of grazing animals at the parcel level
- unique individual animal movement identification numbers for each eligible animal
- any changes to the original documentation since submission of the application, such as replacement animals

Records are also needed of the unique individual permanent NBAR breed identification numbers for each eligible animal that independently verify that each animal is:

- a registered pedigree pure breeding NBAR animal; or
- the genetically-provable purebred progeny of registered pedigree pure breeding parents of the same eligible NBAR breed

These NBAR breed identification numbers for each eligible animal can be either:

- the unique individual pedigree registration number
- the unique individual birth notification number
- Applicants will have to submit breed registration records and proof of animal provenance, parentage and availability for each animal.

Applicants will need to send a stocking calendar agreed with Natural England with their application.

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- CT6 – Coastal vegetation management supplement
- GS15 – Haymaking supplement
- GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement
- GS17 – Lenient grazing supplement
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP3 – Bracken control supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WD9 – Livestock exclusion supplement – scrub and successional areas
- WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.*

### Breeds

The UK NBAR list, <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/uk-native-animal-breeds-at-risk-list> shows the eligible breeds. Information on suitable breeds for different types of grassland and how to manage them is available at the [Grazing Animals Project](http://www.grazinganimalsproject.org.uk/), <http://www.grazinganimalsproject.org.uk/>.

On farms with mainstream breeds as well as NBAR livestock payment will be limited to an area of land sufficient to maintain the eligible NBAR livestock.

# Threatened species supplement (SP9) Higher Tier

## £120 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only in combination with a land management option where either:

- at least 1 **priority species** is present on the site <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/4958719460769792>
- the site can be managed to create the right conditions to allow the introduction, re-colonisation or range extension of a named priority species

Use of the supplement needs to have written support from a species specialist for the work.

### Where this supplement cannot be used

For any work within the scope of standard options or capital items

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for tailored habitat management to benefit identified priority species.

## REQUIREMENTS

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- If the work is specified in an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study that Natural England has approved, send a copy of the approved plan or study with the application.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Priority species specialist report

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as all other supplements **except:**

- SW14 – Nil fertiliser supplement

# Administration of group managed agreements supplement (SP10) Higher Tier

## £6 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only in combination with an annual management option. The agreement land must be common land or have shared tenure with 2 or more legal interests.

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for agreements with shared tenure. It supports good administration of these agreements.

A well-administered agreement group will meet regularly and keep suitable records.

## REQUIREMENTS

### Register with the Rural Payments Agency

Agreement holders will need to [register with the Rural Payments Agency \(RPA\), https://www.gov.uk/guidance/register-for-rural-payments](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/register-for-rural-payments) if they have not already done so. All participants in the agreement must be registered with the RPA and have their own Single Business Identifier. The agreement group must be separately registered.

Carry out the management as set out in the agreement.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- an up to date list of agreement participants. Send revised versions to the RPA and Natural England within 30 days of any change
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work.
- records documenting the activities and decisions of the group, association or committee. This includes records of meetings, constitution and agreement documentation and management of changes to the group membership or participants list

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a copy of a written internal agreement

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

This supplement may be used with most land management options and other supplements but not with the organic conversion or organic land management options.

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY THIS SUPPLEMENT

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.*

### Picking the right situation

This supplement can be used where a group rather than an individual manages agreement land. This will often apply where the agreement is on common land or where there is shared grazing.

### Internal agreements

This internal agreement needs to state:

- the group's governance
- responsibilities for achieving the agri-environment agreement requirements
- how members will be paid
- the evidence that all participants and the group are registered as a business with the RPA



# Making space for water (SW12) Higher Tier

## £640 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 20 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme. This is because the work needs a high level of change.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on arable, temporary grassland or improved permanent grassland that meets all of the following conditions:

- the site, either alone or as part of a group application, forms a natural hydrological unit
- the Environment Agency have provided written support
- the site is identified in a relevant Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI) strategic river restoration plan, or [River Basin Management Plan, https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/river-basin-management-plans-2015](https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/river-basin-management-plans-2015)

To use this option an applicant must also meet one of the following conditions:

- be following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- plan to adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

### Features that can be included in this option

Over the life of the agreement the features present on the land may change or move. The following features can be included even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- new areas of water (rivers, streams, becks and brooks, ponds, standing water), bare ground, cobble, gravel
- increased areas of water (rivers, streams, becks and brooks, ponds, standing water)

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will help water flow in a winding course across floodplains, flooding temporarily to restore river and wetland habitats. This will also reduce the risk of high energy flows and soil erosion, and allow water to drain freely back into the river channel.

If successful there will be:

- new areas of river and wetland habitats appearing, such as new channels, temporary ponds in old channels and wet grassland
- gradual erosion and movement of the river bed and river banks
- deposits of gravel, sand and silt appearing in the river channel and on the floodplain after a flood

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- prepare the land to receive additional floodwater from the watercourse next to it and allow the river and water to move freely in the floodplain
- establish grassland
- follow grazing or cutting requirements, including exclude livestock at certain times
- limit manure and fertiliser applications

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use pesticides other than for control of injurious weeds or invasive species
- create new tracks for vehicle access

- undertake land forming and earthworks, works to river banks or bed, flood defences or bank protection and drainage works other than as set out in the agreement
- carry out supplementary feeding

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected to the work
- a record of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- a monthly record of the numbers of livestock grazing each parcel

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of work completed on shingle banks, river channels, flood defences or bank protection, or any completed land forming or earth works

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- written support from the Environment Agency
- a map of the land drainage system
- a map of permitted access routes
- photographs of areas proposed for works on shingle banks, river channels, flood defences or bank protection, or areas of land forming and earthworks
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is used or evidence to support low intensity farmer claim - this information can be provided with the application or within 18 months of the start of the agreement, as applicable
- SSSI strategic river restoration plan or River basin Management Plan

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located in the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP9 – Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

#### How to choose the right location

In most cases professional advice will be needed to choose the right location for this option. It is usually in areas where flooding and river movement is the most active. Marginal land next to river SSSIs that require restoration for river habitats and species is suitable. In some circumstances this option may be suitable for land next to priority habitat rivers.

The option must not be used where there is an existing obligation to carry out the works or management required, e.g. as a planning condition or as compensation.

This options aims to restore natural river movement which in most cases is likely to make the land ineligible for BPS. Applicants should check with the RPA before claiming BPS on the land under this option.

### **Consents and permissions**

Applicant will need advice and relevant consents from the Environment Agency, Natural England and the local authority before carrying out any work.

### **Feasibility studies**

A Feasibility Study will be required to assess the feasibility to restore the river on the site. A feasibility study can be funded.

### **Capital works plan**

A capital works plan will be needed to set out how to alter the current course of the river. It should include the engineering requirements to remove flood banks or bank protection. Funding is available to help support the development of an implementation plan and to carry out major preparatory works.

### **Get help to carry out this option**

In some cases it may be necessary to hire a specialist project or site manager to act as a clerk of works to help carry out this option.

### **Access routes and managing flood risk**

New routes or bridges to access and maintain the site may be required. These should not be located where they will affect future river movement or temporary flooding.

Escape routes and refuge areas for people or livestock to use during floods must be identified.

### **Work with neighbouring farms**

Applicant might need to work with neighbouring farms to manage land within the hydrological unit and ensure access to the land.

### **Further information**

Whole-river restoration strategies have been developed for rivers designated as SSSIs. This option can be used to help implement them. Read more about restoring designated rivers in England on the [River Restoration Centre website](http://www.therrc.co.uk/designated-rivers), <http://www.therrc.co.uk/designated-rivers>.

[River Basin Management Plans](https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/river-basin-management-plans-2015), <https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/river-basin-management-plans-2015> are drawn up for river basin districts in England, Wales and Scotland as a requirement of the water framework directive.

# Very low nitrogen inputs to groundwaters (SW13) Higher Tier

## £251 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole parcel

Only on improved grassland that meets each of the following requirements:

- the area receives more than 200kg of nitrogen per ha per year
- the area is specified as a priority Water Framework Directive (WFD) groundwater failure within the Countryside Stewardship targeting, for which this option is a priority
- this option must be applied to all land parcels within the target area

To use this option an applicant must also meet one of the following conditions:

- be following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- plan to adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will reduce nutrient input to grassland in highly targeted locations to help slow or reverse nutrient levels in groundwater. This will be targeted to help specific designated sites and Water Framework Directive Protected Areas.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- graze or cut for hay or silage to get an average sward height of between 5cm and 15cm in November
- make sure bare ground covers less than 10% of the total area by year 2

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- supplementary feed except for the provision of mineral blocks (non-energy based)
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles or bracken
- apply manures or fertilisers except when the parcel is cut, and limit this to either 12 tonnes of well-rotted farmyard manure per ha per year or up to 50kg of nitrogen per ha per year

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected to the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- a monthly record of the number of livestock grazing the land

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is used or evidence to support low intensity farmer claim - this information can be provided with the application or within 18 months of the start of the agreement, as applicable

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land
- OT1 – Organic land management – rotational land
- OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### **How to choose the right location**

This option is only available in targeted areas. The targeting is restricted to specified areas to improve the quality of groundwater feeding into at risk (nitrogen-limited) designated sites and failing groundwater drinking water protected areas.

This option will also be restricted to areas where grassland is the major agricultural land use, i.e. at least 80% of land is grassland receiving more than 200 kg nitrogen per hectare per year.

# Flood mitigation on arable reversion to grassland (SW15)

£488 per ha

Higher Tier

## Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on arable or temporary grassland that meets all of the following:

- The site, either alone or as part of a group application forms a natural hydrological unit
- The Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board have provided written support
- A Natural England adviser or a person nominated by NE has endorsed the application

## Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- Ditches, dykes, drains and streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- Natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as the requirements can still be met
- Bracken
- Areas of scrub, rock outcrops, and boulders up to 0.1 ha

## How this option will benefit the environment

It will intercept and slow surface runoff from rainfall events and provide space for water from streams and rivers to be stored during a flood event to help manage flood risk. It can be used in three ways:

- To slow down surface runoff on land outside the floodplain by creating temporary storage behind suitable structures such as low earth bunds and modified field-boundaries, or enhanced hollows and depressions.
- To enable the re-connection of the river with the floodplain in areas that will not attract funding from an Environment Agency (EA) flood scheme or option SW12. Flood water will be allowed to spread across the land and naturally subside.
- To reconnect the river and floodplain in association with specific Priority River Habitats and SSSIs where the Making Space for Water option is targeted.

If successful there will be new areas of temporary water storage both in the floodplain and outside it that help delay peak flood flows reaching communities and infrastructure at risk of flooding.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- Prepare the land to receive additional surface runoff or flood water
- Establish grassland
- Limit manure and fertiliser applications

Do not:

- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives
- undertake land forming and earthworks, works to river banks or bed, flood defences or bank protection and drainage works other than as set out in the agreement

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with any work
- field operations at the parcel level including soil loosening to remove compaction, clearance of flood debris, de-silting of banded areas, reseeded
- dates and photographs of flooding

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from Environment Agency, Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board
- NE endorsement
- A map of existing land drainage in the parcel

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## RELATED OPTIONS

A number of other options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option. Applicants should discuss and agree these with their adviser

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### How to choose the right location

In most cases professional advice will be needed to choose the right location for this option. Each situation will have different priorities.

Slowing down surface runoff – a CSF Water Management Plan or a PA1 Implementation Plan may suffice. In complex applications further advice may be required, such as a Feasibility Study - PA2 your NE Adviser can guide you to possible sources of relevant advice.

Reconnecting the river and flood plain will need a feasibility study – this could be funded using PA2 but could also be provided by another project. This study should explore the options and provide evidence for the recommended solution. Capital items may also be used where major preparatory works are required to restore a priority habitat or priority species.

The option must not be used where there is an existing obligation to carry out the works or management required, eg as a planning condition or as compensation.

A Capital Works Plan will be needed to set out how to alter the current course of the river. It should include the engineering requirements to implement the option.

### Consents and permissions

Applicants will need advice and relevant consents from the Environment Agency for land adjacent to main rivers, Lead local Flood Authority for other land and the Internal drainage Board in their areas.

**Get help to carry out this option**

In some cases it may be necessary to hire a specialist project or site manager to act as a clerk of works to help carry out this option.

**Access routes and managing flood risk**

New routes or bridges to access and maintain the site may be required. These should not be located where they will affect future river movement or temporary flooding.

Escape routes and refuge areas for people or livestock to use during floods must be identified.

**Work with neighbouring farms**

Applicants might need to work with neighbouring farms to manage land within the hydrological unit and ensure access to the land.

**Further information**

Whole-river restoration strategies have been developed for rivers designated as SSSIs. This option can be used to help implement them. Read more about restoring designated rivers in England on the River Restoration Centre website.

Strategic Flood Risk Assessments are being developed for all land in England, contact your local EA Adviser for more information.



# Flood mitigation on permanent grassland (SW16) Higher Tier

## £256 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on permanent grassland that meets all of the following:

- The site, either alone or as part of a group application forms a natural hydrological unit
- The Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board have provided written support
- A Natural England adviser or a person nominated by NE has endorsed the application

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- Ditches, dykes, drains and streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- Natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as the requirements can still be met
- Bracken
- Areas of scrub, rock outcrops, and boulders up to 0.1 ha

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will intercept and slow surface runoff from rainfall events and provide space for water from streams and rivers to be stored during a flood event to help manage flood risk. It can be used in three ways:

- To slow down surface runoff on land outside the floodplain by creating temporary storage behind suitable structures such as low earth bunds and modified field-boundaries, or enhanced hollows and depressions.
- To enable the re-connection of the river with the floodplain in areas that will not attract funding from an Environment Agency (EA) flood scheme or option SW12. Flood water will be allowed to spread across the land and naturally subside.
- To reconnect the river and floodplain in association with specific Priority River Habitats and SSSIs where the Making Space for Water option is targeted.

If successful there will be new areas of temporary water storage both in the floodplain and outside it that help delay peak flood flows reaching communities and infrastructure at risk of flooding.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- Prepare the land to receive additional surface runoff or flood water
- Establish grassland
- Limit manure and fertiliser applications

Do not:

- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives
- undertake land forming and earthworks, works to river banks or bed, flood defences or bank protection and drainage works other than as set out in the agreement

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with any work
- field operations at the parcel level including soil loosening to remove compaction, clearance of flood debris, de-silting of banded areas, reseeded
- dates and photographs of flooding

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from Environment Agency, Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board
- NE endorsement
- A map of existing land drainage in the parcel

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## RELATED OPTIONS

A number of other options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option. Applicants should discuss and agree these with their adviser

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### How to choose the right location

In most cases professional advice will be needed to choose the right location for this option. Each situation will have different priorities.

Slowing down surface runoff – a CSF Water Management Plan or a PA1 Implementation Plan may suffice. In complex applications further advice may be required, such as a Feasibility Study - PA2 your NE Adviser can guide you to possible sources of relevant advice.

Reconnecting the river and flood plain will need a feasibility study – this could be funded using PA2 but could also be provided by another project. This study should explore the options and provide evidence for the recommended solution. Capital items may also be used where major preparatory works are required to restore a priority habitat or priority species.

The option must not be used where there is an existing obligation to carry out the works or management required, eg as a planning condition or as compensation.

A Capital Works Plan will be needed to set out how to alter the current course of the river. It should include the engineering requirements to implement the option.

### Consents and permissions

Applicants will need advice and relevant consents from the Environment Agency for land adjacent to main rivers, Lead local Flood Authority for other land and the Internal drainage Board in their areas.

### Get help to carry out this option

In some cases it may be necessary to hire a specialist project or site manager to act as a clerk of works to help carry out this option.

### Access routes and managing flood risk

New routes or bridges to access and maintain the site may be required. These should not be located where they will affect future river movement or temporary flooding.

Escape routes and refuge areas for people or livestock to use during floods must be identified.

**Work with neighbouring farms**

Applicants might need to work with neighbouring farms to manage land within the hydrological unit and ensure access to the land.

**Further information**

Whole-river restoration strategies have been developed for rivers designated as SSSIs. This option can be used to help implement them. Read more about restoring designated rivers in England on the River Restoration Centre website.

Strategic Flood Risk Assessments are being developed for all land in England, contact your local EA Adviser for more information.

# Management of rough grazing for birds (UP2) Higher Tier

## £88 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on permanent grassland parcels of at least 2ha that are within a Less Favoured Area. This includes allotments, intakes, newtakes and semi-improved in-bye that already support (or have the potential to support) breeding waders.

The applicant must also meet at least one of the following conditions to use this option:

- follow a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers, streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as the requirements can still be met
- bracken
- areas of scree, rock outcrops and boulders – each area can cover up to 0.1ha
- permanent water up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that allows livestock access and has grass underneath

### How this option will benefit the environment

It is for restoring or maintaining upland bird populations. These are normally breeding waders such as lapwing, snipe, redshank, curlew and golden plover, but may also include yellow wagtail, black grouse or other priority species. The option brings about water level management and provides the appropriate grassland habitat and sward structure for feeding and nesting.

If successful there will be rough grassland habitat supporting target species. Where appropriate, a water level management regime may also be in place, including scrapes and foot-drains. The water level management will also have enhanced pools or ditches for aquatic plants, invertebrates and other important species.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- only graze in line with an agreed stocking calendar, which includes minimum and maximum stocking rates by grazing animal type by month
- manage grazing with cattle, sheep or both at an agreed stocking density during the bird-breeding period - at other times, manage stocking densities to achieve the desired sward heights
- follow agreed stock-feeding practices
- manage field operations to reduce effects on breeding birds
- create or maintain wet features, for example by blocking existing surface drains and ditches, or creating grips or scrapes

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- annual bag records
- a count of breeding birds in year 5 of the agreement – send this with the final claim

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- where applicable, photographs of the extent of bracken on historic and archaeological features
- a map and photographs of the extent of bracken on the option area
- a map of the land drainage system
- a stocking calendar approved by Natural England
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is used or evidence to support low intensity farmer claim - this information can be provided with the application or within 18 months of the start of the agreement, as applicable

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement
- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT6 – Organic land management – enclosed rough grazing
- SP1 – Difficult sites supplement
- SP2 – Raised water level supplement
- SP3 – Bracken control supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 – Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### Pick the right location

Choose sites that:

- have proven breeding for at least 2 of the target wader species, have black grouse present, or are within 2km of a known lek site (where males gather to entice mates)
- are open, with any surrounding hedges less than about 2m high
- experience minimal disturbance (from footpaths or public rights of way)
- have no overhead pylons or power lines
- have no in-field trees
- are not next to woodland
- have either an existing high water table or surface water attributes (flushes, ditches, foot drains), or where they could be created

### **Sites to avoid**

Avoid sites that are:

- steep (above 14:1, or 8 degrees)
- less than 2ha and bounded by tall (over 2m) hedgerows, scrub or trees

### **Vegetation management**

Tailor vegetation management to the target species - usually a range of vegetation heights is preferred.

### **Management of wet features (drains, grips, scrapes)**

Provide surface wet features from 1 March to 1 June (such as scrapes, flushes, foot drains or surface standing water). At least 50% of the wet features' edges should have exposed mud at the water's edge to promote invertebrate activity and allow chicks access to feed.

Consider the need to re-profile man-made wet features annually and maintain as required.

Any mechanical operations should be scheduled for the driest period of the year (or after mid-August if breeding snipe are present).

Manage rushes so that they cover no more than 20% of the option land.

### **Grazing**

Use quiet stock on these sites to avoid unnecessary trampling of nests and chicks.

Adequate grazing and appropriate mechanical operations after the breeding season (August to March) are vital to create the desired vegetation mosaic for the following spring.

It is important that there is adequate grazing available which is not in breeding bird options to retain flexibility to manage the breeding bird areas correctly during the breeding season.

# Management of moorland (UP3) Higher Tier

## £43 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option runs for 10 years not the standard five years for the scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part parcel

Only on parcels:

- above the Moorland Line
- that cross the Moorland Line
- that contribute to a single grazing unit above the Moorland Line
- that contain one or more moorland priority habitats or species
- above the stock-proof boundary of enclosed in-bye land that contain semi-natural moorland habitat vegetation, e.g. allotments, intakes or newtakes

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bracken
- ditches
- dykes
- scrub including gorse bushes and briar
- scree, rock, outcrops or boulders
- streams less than 4m wide and that take up less than 1ha of the parcel
- ponds less than 1 ha of the parcel
- unsurfaced roads, tracks and paths

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will:

- maintain and restore moorland priority habitats and ecosystem function
- maintain and restore species
- protect historic features
- strengthen landscape character

If successful there will be:

- improved condition of moorland habitats and associated species
- enhanced soil management
- reduced diffuse pollution
- improvements to water quality and flood risk management
- historic environmental features with no bare soil or poaching (trampling)
- stabilized and permanently re-vegetated areas that were previously eroded
- historic features unaffected by trees, bracken and scrub
- no animal burrows developing on historic features

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- only graze the land in accordance with the stocking calendar
- stick to the minimum and maximum stocking rates for each month and for different types of grazing animal
- manage vegetation by burning or cutting, using agreed practices
- prevent spread of bracken or scrub on historic or archaeological sites
- carry out a wildfire risk assessment

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, harrow or roll
- cultivate or re-seed
- apply any fertilisers, manures or lime
- apply supplementary feed other than as prescribed
- use pesticides other than as prescribed

### Keeping records

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans see the [Forestry Commission's guide](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf>. Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- a monthly record of stock numbers by parcel and stock type

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the extent of scrub and bracken on historic and archaeological features

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- a stocking calendar approved by Natural England
- photographs of the extent of scrub and bracken on any historic and archaeological features on the site
- a map of the land drainage system
- a map of permitted access routes

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- UP4 - Management of moorland vegetation supplement
- UP5 - Moorland re-wetting supplement
- UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

#### Contact organisations early

Contact Natural England or other relevant organisations well before making an application.

#### Further information

Read about the regulations on [burning heather and grass](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/heather-and-grass-burning-apply-for-a-licence), <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/heather-and-grass-burning-apply-for-a-licence>.



# Management of moorland vegetation supplement (UP4)

## Higher Tier

### £10 per ha

#### Where to use this supplement

With the UP3 - Management of moorland option.

Only when land is within the moorland line and Severely Disadvantaged Areas (SDAs) and where one of the following is needed:

- for the management of vegetation where additional interventions will be required, for example restoration burning or cutting followed by the addition of *Sphagnum*
- significant changes to vegetation management, to bring about favourable or recovering condition of designated sites or functionality of priority habitats and to benefit priority species.

#### Where this supplement cannot be used

To support existing burning or cutting regimes, or minor modifications to them

#### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for carrying out an appropriate programme of vegetation management to contribute to restoration and improvement in functionality of priority habitats such as dry heath, wet heath and blanket bog where significant changes to current management are required.

If successful there will be a significant change to burning and/or cutting management so that it is carried out to promote restoration of habitats. These changes will have created more diverse vegetation or opportunities for colonisation by key species such as *Sphagnum*. There will also be positive impacts on water quality, reduced erosion and enhanced carbon storage.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to follow a programme of management as agreed in UP3 - Management of moorland.

A wildfire risk assessment may be needed.

#### Keeping records

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans see the [Forestry Commission's guide](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FCPGo22.pdf/%24FILE/FCPGo22.pdf>. Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.

### Pick the right site

On deep peat (blanket bog, other mires) and wet heath, this supplement should only be used when there is a clear need identified in a restoration plan. Do not burn these habitats unless specified as part of a restoration plan or as part of an agreed wildfire management plan.

Other examples of where the UP4 supplement could be considered may include:

- re introduction of burning to dry heath habitats as part of a Site Restoration Plan (eg to control woody re-growth or manage fire risk).
- to create habitat conditions suitable for specific priority species.
- to facilitate a switch from burning to cutting management as part of a Site Restoration Plan.
- to improve management of western gorse heath by cutting as part of a Site Restoration Plan.
- to implement fire risk mitigation planning as part of a Site Restoration Plan.
- to encourage tailored management of vegetation on historic features.

This supplement should not be used:

- on dry heath where burning or cutting are required to achieve economic outcomes.
- to introduce burning to wet heath or blanket bog habitat for any reasons other than as part of a Site Restoration or Wildfire Management Plan.
- where burning or cutting would damage historic environment features.
- on montane habitats or where damage to woodland or environmentally valuable scrub may occur.
- to support the rotational burning of purple moor-grass on wet heath, but cutting may be appropriate

### Taking care of historic or archaeological features

Sometimes these features may benefit from management that controls vegetation cover and in some cases burning is preferred to cutting. Avoid burning where heat may damage features such as boundary stones, or cutting where damage may be caused by machinery. Refer to the Management of Moorland option prescriptions and seek advice from the Natural England advisor. Do not cross historic or archaeological features with access routes for heavy machinery and vehicles.

# Moorland re-wetting supplement (UP5) Higher Tier

## £18 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only:

- with option UP3 - Management of moorland
- if a peat restoration programme has been started or completed

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It will maintain and restore vegetation mosaics, wetland habitats and associated wildlife.

If successful there will be:

- improved hydrology of moorland habitats
- benefits to upland flora and fauna, e.g. increased sphagnum moss growth
- benefits to historic features
- strengthened landscape character
- improved breeding habitat for invertebrates, a food source for grouse and wader chicks

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to maintain blocks. Do this by making sure that:

- there are no breaches in the blocks
- excess water from the grip does not flow into the channel below
- excess water soaks into the ground, down slope from the grip
- no water - except natural peak surface water-flows between dams

Make sure in the re-profiled area that:

- bare peat has stabilised
- vegetation has established
- channel water levels are maintained at ground surface
- channels are actively silting up behind grip blocks

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- records of all management work including grazing, grip blocking and other re-wetting work
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- inspection reports and photographs of grips and blocks submitted annually with the claim
- records of maintenance work done to meet the requirements

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs showing the stabilised peat
- photographs of any excavation or construction work, if applicable

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements

- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement

- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement
- UP3 - Management of moorland
- UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement

More than one supplement may be used if agreed with Natural England adviser.

## **ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT**

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.*

### **Pick the right location**

Good sites for this supplement are:

- deep peat soils that can support peat forming blanket bog vegetation
- Natural England's priority habitat for blanket bog
- restored areas with reduced grazing capacity due to re-wetting

# Upland livestock exclusion supplement (UP6) Higher Tier

## £16 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only:

- with UP3 - Management of moorland
- where livestock are kept from the site for at least 4 months

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It will improve habitat and feature conditions.

If successful there will be:

- increased rates of heather regeneration
- improved rates of flowering of rare species such as spring gentian
- a regeneration of scrub such as juniper
- improved downstream water quality
- improvements in the condition and visibility of archaeological sites and other historic features

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- only graze the land as scheduled in the stocking calendar, including a period of livestock exclusion
- agree where the excluded livestock should be kept and how they are managed
- stick to the minimum and maximum stocking rates for each month and for different types of grazing animal

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- a stocking calendar approved by Natural England

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following options and supplements:

- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 - Shepherding supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- UP4 - Management of moorland vegetation supplement
- UP5 - Moorland re-wetting supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this supplement.*

Natural England should agree that habitats and other features on this site will improve more quickly than under the current or common practice.

The supplement might finish before the end of the agreement if it is used for a period of restoration.

### **Plan for livestock exclusions**

Livestock exclusions will usually be done in winter, but some habitats are different.

Be aware of exceptions, which include removing livestock:

- from limestone grassland from May to August
- from limestone pavement areas for a specified number of years
- during bare peat restoration works for a specified number of years
- from September to April during dry or wet heath restoration

### **Erect fencing**

Consider erecting temporary or permanent fencing if this is a part-parcel supplement, as it helps when removing stock from parts of grazing units.

# Woodland creation - maintenance payments (WD1) Higher Tier

## £200 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

The capital item TE4 - Supply and plant tree must be used with this option

### Where this option cannot be used

On land owned by public authorities; this includes land owned by the state, the Crown, county councils, district councils, and local authorities

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will help create woodland that:

- supports wildlife, by linking habitats together or providing a protective buffer between them
- reduces the risk of floods, improves water quality and prevents soil erosion
- is resilient and can adapt to climate change
- enhances the landscape

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- keep all newly planted trees free from competing vegetation for 10 years by using approved herbicides, mulch, or a clearing saw, hook or scythe
- replace any trees that die
- maintain fences, tree shelters or spiral guards
- maintain areas of open space
- remove individual tree protection in year 10

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely successful applicants will not be allowed to:

- use any herbicides if trees are being planted on land next to a watercourse.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- photographs showing the level of maintenance in years 2, 4, 6, 8 and 10 (submitted with the annual claim)
- a self-certification checklist after planting in years 4, 7, and 10, confirming that all the agreed operations have been carried out (submitted with the annual claim)
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

Agreement holders will need to carry out maintenance so that the woodland is fully established by year 10.

## Woodland improvement (WD2) Higher Tier

### £100 per ha per year

#### How this option will benefit the environment

It will improve the biodiversity of woodland or make it more resilient to climate change.

#### REQUIREMENTS

The agreement will set out the objectives and what must be done to achieve them. This will be based on a pre-existing Woodland Management Plan approved by the Forestry Commission.

This option can only be used on areas covered by the agreement. It cannot be used on other woodland areas also covered by the Management Plan. The specific compartments where this option will be used will be identified in the application process.

Agreement holders will need to apply for this option under one of the following priority objectives:

- Restore plantations on ancient woodland sites
- Enhance priority habitats
- Enhance priority species
- Improve resilience to climate change through continuous cover forestry (CCF)

Agreement holders will need to carry out one or more of the following requirements on the land, as informed by the Woodland Management Plan and as discussed with a Forestry Commission Woodland Officer:

- reduce the percentage of coniferous species by year 5, as agreed with an adviser
- use regeneration felling where appropriate to encourage crown development and/or natural regeneration
- replant 1,100 trees per ha if native tree species haven't started to regenerate naturally 2 years after the removal of conifers (this is for areas larger than 0.25ha)
- manage successional scrub through cyclical cutting
- re-coppice as agreed with an adviser
- thin or selectively fell trees as agreed with an adviser
- implement silvicultural transformation as informed by the Woodland Management Plan
- monitor the presence of red and grey squirrels in red squirrel strongholds
- release existing or recruitment veteran trees from competing tree growth
- control deer if they are identified as a threat in the woodland management plan, put in place a deer management plan and manage deer populations using lethal control or fencing to allow establishment of ground flora and understory
- remove competing, non-native or invasive species by mechanical or chemical control, as agreed with an adviser
- create and/or manage permanent open space and access rides
- manage ride edges by cyclical cutting
- create or maintain appropriate levels of deadwood habitat in line with the UK Forestry Standard (UKFS)
- show evidence of activities undertaken through monitoring, photography and marking
- complete an operational site assessment, or similar, to show UKFS compliant operational activities
- provide monitoring reports in years 3 and 5 to confirm progress (e.g. providing before and after photographs, a record of the number of deer culled, and the results of squirrel monitoring)
- control grey squirrels using live or lethal traps if they are identified as a threat in the woodland management plan. In areas that also contain red squirrels, only live traps can be used. Shooting may be undertaken as an additional method of control.



### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- an FC approved management plan that justifies the need for this option
- monitoring reports, send these with the claim in year 3 and 5

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

# Management of wood pasture and parkland (WD4) Higher Tier

## £46 per ha

### Where to use this option

Only for managing existing lowland wood pasture and parkland in good condition. Recreational parkland is only eligible where it forms part of the farmed environment.

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- rivers, streams, ditches, drains and dykes or any open water less than 4 metres wide
- ponds or inland standing water less than 100 square metres
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways
- small areas of scrub and woodland that do not qualify for specific scrub, woodland or other options

The adviser will provide information on which features can be included.

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will maintain existing lowland wood pasture and parkland on sites that still support mature and veteran trees.

If successful there will be many of the following, depending on whether the site is predominantly wood pasture, parkland or a combination of both:

- undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood that will provide habitats for invertebrates
- additional semi-mature or mature trees that will provide continuity of the tree population
- newly planted trees, spaced evenly with open crowns or patches of regeneration with space to allow open grown crowns to develop
- open grown scrub covering 10% to 20% of the wood-pasture
- flowering trees and scrub such as hawthorn, crab apple and wild pear that will provide food and nectar sources for wildlife
- well managed unimproved or semi-improved grassland or heathland, grazed by traditional cattle in wood pasture and deer and traditional cattle in parkland
- well maintained historic and archaeological features
- well maintained historic designed landscape planting features

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- graze and/or cut to maintain area of closely grazed turf interspersed with taller tussocks
- retain all mature and veteran standing trees and all standing and fallen deadwood, provided that it is consistent with the National Tree Safety Group document 'Common Sense risk management of trees: Landowner Summary'. Fallen dead wood must be left uncut and in situ
- protect existing trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals. Manage tree guards to prevent any damage to growing trees
- protect parkland features, such as fencing, historic structures, lakes and ponds
- plant additional trees or encourage regeneration where required
- maintain the current water regime and agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage in writing with Natural England before undertaking any works
- carry out maintenance works and minor repairs on structural historic or archaeological features on a 'like for like' basis to retain the character of the feature in its local setting

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot tree or weed-wipe for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles, rushes or bracken
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- use supplementary feeding
- harrow or roll
- allow damage to existing trees or vegetation or remove deadwood from the site

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of trees and standing and fallen deadwood - send these with the final claim
- photographs of water levels at certain times of the year for specific water features and water bodies
- photographs of structural, historic and archaeological features - send these with the final claim
- a monthly record of the number of grazing livestock in each parcel
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of all trees and standing and fallen deadwood
- photographs of any proposed areas to enhance a sward
- a map of the drainage system

For parklands, they are also likely to have to send:

- photographs/records of structural historic and archaeological features
- photographs/records of built water bodies showing their depth, shape, profile and design

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- BE6 - Veteran tree surgery
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.

### Veterinary treatments

Avoid applying veterinary treatments on grazing livestock wherever possible. Chemicals from these treatments could harm the insects and fungi that are typical of wood pasture and parkland.

### Maintaining wood pasture and parkland

On historic parkland, provide a detailed feasibility study (management plan) tailored to the site, funded through PA2 Feasibility Study item.

Use grazing livestock, preferably traditional breed cattle in wood pasture or traditional bread cattle and deer in parkland, to maintain the site. Avoid compaction around veteran trees.

Continuity of veteran tree/dead wood habitat is a major concern on wood pasture. If sufficient semi-mature trees are present consider the creation of dead wood habitat on trees capital item and encourage new trees through natural regeneration if possible or with planting.

### Planting new trees

Try to:

- space out newly planted trees (or patches of natural regeneration) so they are wide enough to grow an open crown
- pick trees that are suitable as eventual replacements for mature or veteran trees
- select tree species appropriate to the historic parkland design but consider varieties/provenances that are resilient to local climate change
- on wood pasture/site with veteran trees maintaining the genetic stock of the veteran trees on site is important. Choose varieties that provide the same ecological wood decay conditions as mature or veteran trees already on the site

### Consents and permissions

Be aware that a number of consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPO's) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- old trees especially can host European Protected Species, such as bats

Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement> and felling licences requirements from the Forestry Commission (FC).

### Further information

Read the following guidance booklets for more detail on managing ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/), <http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/>
- Lonsdale, D. (ed) 2014, Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management, Tree Council
- Read, H. (ed) 2000, Veteran trees: a guide to good management

# Restoration of wood pasture and parkland (WD5) Higher Tier

## £244 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Only to restore existing lowland wood pasture and parkland that is in poor condition. Recreational parkland is only eligible where it forms part of the farmed environment.

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- rivers, streams, ditches, drains and dykes or any open water less than 4m wide
- ponds or inland standing water less than 100m square in size
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways
- small areas of scrub and woodland that do not qualify for specific scrub, woodland or other options

The advisor will provide information on which features can be included.

### How this option will benefit the environment

It restores existing lowland wood pasture and parkland on sites that support veteran trees or parkland features.

If successful there will be many of the following, depending on whether the site is predominantly wood pasture, parkland or a combination of both:

- undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood that will provide habitats for invertebrates
- additional semi-mature or mature trees that will provide continuity of the tree population
- newly planted trees, spaced evenly with open crowns or patches of regeneration with space to allow open grown crowns to develop
- open grown scrub covering 10% to 20% of the wood pasture
- flowering trees and scrub such as hawthorn, crab apple and wild pear to provide food and nectar sources for invertebrates
- well managed unimproved or semi-improved grassland or heathland, grazed by traditional breed cattle in wood-pasture and deer and traditional breed cattle in parkland
- well maintained historic and archaeological features
- well maintained historic designed landscape planting and features

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- graze and/or cut to maintain area of closely grazed turf interspersed with taller tussocks
- retain all mature and veteran standing trees and all standing and fallen deadwood, provided that it is consistent with the National Tree Safety Group document 'Common Sense risk management of trees: Landowner Summary'. Fallen dead wood must be left uncut and in situ
- protect existing trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals. Manage tree guards to prevent any damage to growing trees
- protect parkland features, such as fencing, historical structures, lakes and ponds
- plant additional trees or encourage regeneration where required
- maintain the current water regime and agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage in writing with Natural England before undertaking any works
- carry out maintenance works and minor repairs on structural historic or archaeological features on a 'like for like' basis to retain the character of the feature in its local setting

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot tree or weed-wipe for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles, rushes or bracken
- use supplementary feeding
- harrow or roll
- allow damage to existing trees or vegetation or remove deadwood from the site

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of trees and standing and fallen deadwood - send these with the final claim
- photographs of any completed sward enhancement work
- photographs of water levels at certain times of the year for specific water features and built water bodies
- photographs of structural, historic and archaeological features - send these with the final claim
- a monthly record of the number of grazing livestock in each parcel
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of all trees and standing and fallen deadwood
- photographs of any proposed areas to enhance a sward
- a map of the drainage system
- photograph of existing bracken

For parklands, they also likely to have to send:

- photographs/records of structural, historic and archaeological features
- photographs/records of built water bodies showing their depth, shape, profile and design

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 - Management of hedgerows
- BE6 - Veteran tree surgery
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland
- SP1 - Difficult sites supplement
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.

### Veterinary treatments

Avoid applying veterinary treatments on grazing livestock wherever possible. Chemicals from these treatments could harm the insects and fungi that are typical of wood pasture and parkland.

### Maintaining wood pasture and parkland

On historic parkland, provide a detailed Feasibility Study (management plan) tailored to the site, funded through PA2 - Feasibility study.

Use grazing livestock, preferably traditional breed cattle in wood pasture or traditional bread cattle and deer in parkland, to maintain the site. Avoid compaction around veteran trees.

Continuity of veteran tree/dead wood habitat is a major concern on wood pasture. If sufficient semi-mature trees are present consider the creation of dead wood habitat on trees capital item and encourage new trees through natural regeneration if possible or with planting.

### Planting new trees

Try to:

- space out newly planted trees (or patches of natural regeneration) so they are wide enough to grow an open crown
- pick trees that are suitable as eventual replacements for mature or veteran trees on adjacent sites
- select tree species appropriate to the historic parkland design but consider varieties/provenances that are resilient to local climate change
- on wood pasture/site with veteran trees maintaining the genetic stock of the veteran trees on site is important. Choose varieties that provide the same ecological wood decay conditions as mature or veteran trees already on the site

### Consents and permissions

Be aware that a number of consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- old trees especially can host European Protected Species, such as bats

Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement> felling licence requirements from the Forestry Commission (FC).

### Further information

Read these useful guidance booklets for more information on managing ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/), <http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/>
- Lonsdale, D. (ed.) 2013 Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management, Tree Council
- Read, H. 2000 Veteran trees: A guide to good management. Veteran Trees Initiative, available to download from Natural England publications pages. <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/75035>



# Creation of wood pasture (WD6) Higher Tier

## £409 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Only to create new wood pasture on one of the following sites:

- where wood pasture was once present, including ones under arable land
- where it extends, links or buffers existing wood pasture or priority woodland habitats

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- rivers, streams, ditches, drains and dykes or any open water less than 4m wide
- ponds or inland standing water less than 100 square metres
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways
- scrub, woodland and other areas normally included in scrub or woodland options

The adviser will provide information on which features can be included.

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will create new wood-pastures.

If successful there will be:

- undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood providing habitats for invertebrates on land adjacent to that where the creation is being carried out
- newly planted trees, spaced evenly with open crowns or patches of regeneration with space to allow open grown crowns to develop
- open grown scrub covering 10% to 20% of the wood pasture
- flowering trees and scrub such as hawthorn, crab apple and wild pear that will provide food and nectar sources for wildlife
- enhanced grassland sward or heathland

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- use grazing animals or cut to maintain areas of closely grazed turf interspersed with taller tussocks
- retain deadwood in or around standing trees, if any present on site
- protect trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals. Manage tree guards to protect any damage to growing trees
- plant additional trees or encourage regeneration trees and scrub
- limit use of supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles, rushes or bracken
- plough, cultivate or re-seed, except as part of an agreed sward enhancement programme
- harrow or roll
- apply fertilisers or manures
- make any changes to existing drainage without having written agreement from Natural England
- supplementary feed (except for the provision of mineral blocks) without agreement

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- a monthly record of the number of grazing livestock in each parcel



- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of newly established trees (whether planted or naturally regenerated)
- photographs of completed sward enhancement work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of any proposed areas to enhance a sward
- a map of the drainage system
- for sites adjacent to or linking existing wood pasture, maps or photographs of veteran trees/ parkland that it connects to
- for sites that have previously been wood pasture, proof demonstrated by maps or photographs

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- BE6 – Veteran tree surgery
- GS15 - Haymaking supplement
- OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland
- OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement
- SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### Veterinary treatments

Avoid veterinary treatments on livestock that graze on these sites. Chemicals from these treatments could harm the insects and fungi that are typical of wood pasture.

### Maintaining wood pasture

Use grazing livestock, preferably traditional breed cattle, to establish and maintain the site.

### Planting new trees

Try to:

- space out newly planted trees or regeneration so they are wide enough to grow an open crown
- pick varieties that are suitable as eventual replacements for nearby mature and veteran trees, ideally using the same genetic stock

Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement> from the Forestry Commission (FC).

### Further information

Read the following guidance booklets for more information on managing wood pasture with ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/), <http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/>
- Lonsdale, D (ed.) 2013, Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management
- Read, H (ed.) 2000, Veteran trees, a guide to good management

# Creation of successional areas and scrub (WD8) Higher Tier

## £87 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part-parcel

Only:

- on land next to existing scrub or woodland areas
- in areas already inhabited by target species

### Where this option cannot be used

- on historic or archaeological features
- on existing wildlife sites
- where scrub would be harmful to the landscape

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- water-bodies that are less than 4m wide
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways

### How this option will benefit the environment

It regenerates a succession of scrub. This enhances habitats for specific target species and improves the quality of the woodland edge.

Establishing scrub growth also restricts soil erosion and holds back water to reduce downstream flood risks.

If successful there will be:

- more scrub growing close to grassland, woodland and other habitats
- birds and invertebrates using the scrub
- less soil erosion in scrub areas
- reduced flooding in scrub areas

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- keep livestock out of the option area from 1 October to 30 April
- only cut to maintain the scrub and grass mosaic
- only cut to control the spread of injurious weeds and invasive non-native species protect growing trees from livestock and wild animals
- make sure tree guards don't damage growing trees
- keep all mature and veteran trees and standing deadwood
- keep all fallen deadwood in place uncut although applicants can stack them in piles
- graze to maintain the scrub and grass mosaic
- agree with Natural England in writing all drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, before any works take place

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use pesticides and herbicides except to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control nettles, bracken, injurious weeds or invasive non-native species
- cut more than one-third of shrub growth in any one calendar year
- cut during the bird breeding season (1 March to 31 August)
- apply fertilisers or manures
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- harrow or roll
- use supplementary feed

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- soil analyses

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of all trees and standing and fallen deadwood
- a map of the drainage system
- adviser report confirming eligibility requirements have been met
- photograph of existing bracken
- photograph of scrub location
- evidence that scrub creation location proposal meets eligibility requirement

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- BE3 – Management of hedgerows
- SP3 - Bracken control supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WD9 - Livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### Pick the right location

This option works best where:

- there is some open ground amongst the scrub for grasses and non-woody plants to grow
- scrub is next to other habitats such as grassland or heath
- scrub is established by woodland edges
- scrub can hold soils together and slow down surface runoff

### Remove livestock

Remove grazing livestock to allow scrub plants to establish. Once established, stop scrub from becoming too dense by cutting on rotation, or by grazing.

### Establish a variety of scrub

Establish a variety of scrub to provide habitats and food for target species. For example:

- gorse scrub can support birds like the Dartford warbler, stonechat, linnet and yellowhammer
- willow scrub in wetlands can support warblers, reed bunting and willow tits
- buds and berries and caterpillars on scrub are essential food sources for birds

# Management of ditches of high environmental value (WT3)

## Higher Tier

**£37 per 100 metres** for the management of both sides of the ditch

### Where to use this option

Only on ditches of high environmental value and ditches essential for the management of the following options:

- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds
- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches
- dykes
- drains

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will manage ditches of high environmental value that support target species of plants, birds, mammals and invertebrates. It will also manage ditches that are essential to carrying out the wet grassland and wetland options.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage ditches and banks in a suitable manner and at the correct time of year for the target species or habitats
- leave one bank or section of the ditch unmanaged, as a refuge for plants and invertebrates
- dispose of spoil in an appropriate manner
- control and manage invasive alien species, if they're present
- manage ditch water levels appropriately

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- re-profile or increase the width or depth of the ditch
- using spoil to fill hollows or low areas within the field, or placing spoil on historic or archaeological features
- managing all the ditches in any one year
- fence off ditches

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the ditch

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

If the ditch is partly located on a neighbouring parcel of land, this option can be used with any whole-field options or supplements that can be used on that parcel.

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

### What to do if the work is complex

Maintain a variety of successional stages within the ditch network. These may range from open water to well-developed aquatic plant communities. Draw up an implementation plan specific to the site if the work proposed is particularly complex.

### How to manage the ditches

Manage the ditches in a way appropriate to their scale, number and local area (methods of ditch management vary across the country).

### Using the option on one side of a ditch

Normally use this option on both sides of a ditch. However, where control is limited to one side of a ditch, use this option if it will bring about the objectives.

### Restoring ditches

Restore ditches covered by this option with funding from the appropriate ditch restoration capital item. However, this will need to be agreed with Natural England first.

### Protected species

If the ditch contains a protected species, a [wildlife licence](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/wildlife-licences) will be required. <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/wildlife-licences>

# Pond management – first 100 sq m (WT4) Higher Tier

## £103 per pond

### Where to use this option

Only:

- on priority ponds (these are defined on the [Freshwater Habitats Trust website, http://freshwaterhabitats.org.uk/projects/pond-hap/priority-pond-criteria/](http://freshwaterhabitats.org.uk/projects/pond-hap/priority-pond-criteria/))
- on other ponds with flora and fauna of nature conservation importance, good quality water and natural water levels
- when the neighbouring land is under a management option that restricts fertilisers, manures and pesticides

### Where this option cannot be used

In combination with pond management capital items

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will protect and enhance small ponds of high wildlife value.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage vegetation in the pond
- control scrub and invasive non-native plants
- retain overhanging trees, bushes and deadwood
- graze or cut the margins of the pond
- carry out the work within the dates agreed with the adviser
- maintain clear, unpolluted water
- maintain the current water regime

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- introduce any plants or animals (including fish and waterfowl) to the pond
- deepen or change the original profile of the pond
- infill the pond

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the pond

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- a photograph of the pond
- an assessment of existing biological interest

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

The following supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

To avoid damaging the pond:

- survey it to check which species are present
- if the pond contains a protected species, a [wildlife licence](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/wildlife-licences) will be required <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/wildlife-licences>
- only manage one section of it at a time
- keep some of the existing habitat
- keep some of the leaf litter, logs and woody debris
- aim to maintain diversity in the pond complex - if there are several ponds on the site, don't carry out the same management on all of them at the same time

# Pond management (areas more than 100 sq m) (WT5) Higher Tier

## £183 per pond

### Where to use this option

Only:

- on priority ponds (these are defined on the [Freshwater Habitats Trust website](http://freshwaterhabitats.org.uk/projects/pond-hap/priority-pond-criteria/), <http://freshwaterhabitats.org.uk/projects/pond-hap/priority-pond-criteria/>)
- on other ponds with flora and fauna of nature conservation importance, good quality water, and natural water levels
- when the neighbouring land is under a management option that restricts fertilisers, manures and pesticides

### Where this option cannot be used

- in combination with pond management capital items
- on ponds of area less than 100 square metres or greater than 1 ha

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will protect and enhance larger ponds of high wildlife value.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage vegetation in the pond
- control scrub and invasive non-native plants
- retain overhanging trees and bushes and deadwood
- graze or cut the margins of the pond
- carry out the work within the dates agreed with the adviser
- maintain clear, unpolluted water
- maintain the current water regime

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- introduce any plants or animals (including fish and waterfowl) to the pond
- deepen or change the original profile of the pond
- infill the pond

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the pond

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- a photograph of the pond
- an assessment of existing biological interest

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**



## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

The following supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

To avoid damaging the pond:

- survey it to check which species are present
- If the pond contains a protected species, a [wildlife licence](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/wildlife-licences) will be required <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/wildlife-licences>
- only manage one section of it at a time
- keep some of the existing habitat
- keep some of the leaf litter, logs and woody debris
- aim to maintain diversity in the pond complex - if there are several ponds on the site, don't carry out the same management on all of them at the same time

# Management of reedbed (WT6) Higher Tier

## £78 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole and part-parcel

Only on:

- priority habitat reedbed in good condition and more than 2ha in area
- degraded reedbed more than 2ha in area with the potential for restoration

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- areas of open water up to 1 ha

### How this option will benefit the environment

It is for managing, maintaining and restoring priority reedbed habitat.

If successful there will be predominantly open, reed-dominated vegetation with occasional scrub, and open water features along ditch lines and ponded areas. High water levels will sustain open water features all year round. Reedbeds will be well maintained or recovering and will support healthy populations of target reedbed species.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage water levels and water supply
- manage distribution and flow of water through the site
- maintain any culverts, sluices, tidal flaps or bunds
- manage scrub and vegetation to maintain a predominantly open reedbed
- dispose of cut material appropriately
- manage open water features

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds and invasive non-native species

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs before works commence

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP2 – Raised water level supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 – Threatened species supplement
- WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement
- WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

Reedbed habitat quality can vary greatly. Reedbed size, degrees of wetness and dryness, scrub cover, soil type, water quality and reed management practices all affect wildlife opportunities. For example, a small scrubby reedbed might support a diverse invertebrate assemblage but will not attract breeding bittern.

Manage the reedbed with a planned set of wildlife goals. Plans should be appropriate and feasible and take account of:

- area available
- water supply
- topography
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact

### Further information

The RSPB website is a useful source of information, including the report [Bringing Reedbeds to Life](http://www.rspb.org.uk/Images/bringing_reedbeds_to_life_tcm9-385799.pdf). [http://www.rspb.org.uk/Images/bringing\\_reedbeds\\_to\\_life\\_tcm9-385799.pdf](http://www.rspb.org.uk/Images/bringing_reedbeds_to_life_tcm9-385799.pdf)

# Creation of reedbed (WT7) Higher Tier

## £323 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole and part-parcel

Only on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- improved grassland
- wetland habitat in poor condition if approved by a specialist
- land with a level or very shallow gradient and a reliable, sufficient water supply that will maintain adequate flow and water table elevation during the summer

### Where this option cannot be used

- on existing semi-natural habitat, unless existing wetland is in poor condition and the work is agreed by a specialist
- on historic or archaeological features
- when it could flood someone else's land
- if it is associated with poor water quality
- on areas of open water 1ha or more in area

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- areas of open water up to 1 ha

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will help create new areas of reedbed priority habitat on land that is currently of low wildlife value.

If successful it will generate open reed-dominated vegetation on waterlogged ground, interspersed with open water features along ditch lines and pond areas sustained all year round. The reedbed will support healthy populations of target reedbed species.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- implement earthworks to create ground and water conditions suitable for reedbed
- establish reedbed vegetation
- manage water levels and water supply
- manage distribution and flow of water through the site
- maintain any culverts, sluices, tidal flaps or bunds
- manage scrub and opportunistic species to assist reedbed establishment
- dispose of cut material appropriately
- manage open water features

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds and invasive non-native species

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- the agreed implementation plan and feasibility study
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of areas proposed for land-forming or earthworks and works to establish vegetation

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP2 – Raised water level supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 – Threatened species supplement
- WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement
- WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

Reedbed habitat quality can vary greatly. Reedbed size, degrees of wetness and dryness, scrub cover, soil type, water quality and reed management practices affect wildlife opportunities. For example, a small scrubby reedbed can support a diverse invertebrate assemblage but will not attract breeding bittern.

Create the reedbed with a planned set of wildlife goals. Feasibility and impact should be fully assessed in advance and all appropriate advice and permissions obtained. A detailed implementation plan for the works should be agreed with Natural England. Plans should be appropriate and feasible and take account of:

- area available
- water supply
- topography
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact.

## Further Information

The RSPB website is a useful source of information, including the report [Bringing Reedbeds to Life](http://www.rspb.org.uk/Images/bringing_reedbeds_to_life_tcm9-385799.pdf). [http://www.rspb.org.uk/Images/bringing\\_reedbeds\\_to\\_life\\_tcm9-385799.pdf](http://www.rspb.org.uk/Images/bringing_reedbeds_to_life_tcm9-385799.pdf)

# Management of fen (WT8) Higher Tier

## £39 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole or part-parcel

Only on:

- priority fen habitat in good condition
- priority reedbed habitat in good condition and less than 2 ha
- a mosaic of priority fen and reedbed habitat in good condition where total reedbed area does not exceed 2ha
- fen and reedbed habitat (alone or combined) in poor condition where there is adequate water supply to restore appropriate water levels and the total reedbed area does not exceed 2ha

### When this option cannot be used

- areas of open water that are 1 ha or more
- areas of reedbed greater than 2 ha

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, drains or dykes that are less than 4m wide
- a pond or standing water that's under 1ha
- rivers and streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- bracken beds if control of these are included in the agreement
- scrub or woodland if there is less than 5% cover or if control of these are included in the agreement

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will help maintain and restore priority fen habitat and small areas of reedbed.

If successful there will be predominantly open fen vegetation, with occasional scrub. There may also be small open water features along ditch lines, water tracks and ponded areas. High water levels will be sustained by a natural, unpolluted water supply which will support a diverse range of target fen species.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage water levels and water supply
- maintain any culverts, sluices, tidal flaps or bunds
- manage scrub and vegetation to maintain a predominantly open habitat
- dispose of cut material appropriately

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides and herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles or bracken

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland
- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing to the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement
- WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

Fen is a diverse habitat type with different fen types depending on factors such as water chemistry, soil type, fertility, position in the landscape and historical management.

To maintain or restore fen appropriately consider the location and landscape setting. Identify the type of fen the option is aiming to conserve and enhance and set objectives and management appropriately.

Decide how best to manage and restore fens by taking into account:

- how and where it sits in the wider landscape
- how past modification and management have influenced the fen and the wildlife it supports
- how the fen is supplied with water and how it drains
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact

Small fen sites are usually fragments of much larger wetlands and semi-natural landscapes so look for opportunities to extend and buffer existing fens by:

- re-wetting areas with drained peat next to them
- blocking or in-filling pipes or ditches that intercept springs or drain the fen

Account for the surroundings and neighbouring habitats to plan more coherent wetland units. Habitats can include lowland raised bog, wet grassland or wet woodland.

The character and condition of a fen is largely determined by water that comes from its catchment. Therefore it's important that surrounding land is managed sympathetically and in ways that won't damage the fen through pollution by nutrients or sediment runoff.

If the proposed management involves raising water levels, applicants should contact the Environment Agency before applying for this item.

# Creation of fen (WT9) Higher Tier

## £446 per ha

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### Where to use this option

Whole or part-parcel

Only on:

- arable land, temporary grassland, improved permanent grassland
- other wetland habitat that is in poor condition if approved by a specialist
- land with an suitable and adequate water supply - suitable sites are usually underlain by peat but can also be on slopes with a groundwater outflow

### Where this option cannot be used

- on existing wetland habitat, unless existing wetland is in poor condition and the work is agreed by a specialist
- on areas of open water 1ha or more in area

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- areas of open water up to 1 ha

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will help create new areas of fen priority habitat on land with low wildlife value, particularly around existing wetland habitats.

If successful this option will create predominantly open fen vegetation, with occasional scrub. There may be small open water features along ditch lines, water tracks and ponded areas. High water levels will be sustained by a natural, unpolluted water supply which will support a diverse range of target fen species.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- undertake any ground works in accordance with an agreed plan
- manage water levels and water supply
- establish fen vegetation
- maintain any culverts, sluices or bunds
- manage scrub and vegetation to maintain a predominantly open habitat
- manage scrub and opportunistic species to assist fen establishment
- dispose of cut material appropriately

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds and invasive non-native species

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- before and after photographs of the site

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.



Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a recommendation from a specialist if using this option for existing wetland habitat that is in poor condition
- photographs of areas proposed for land forming or earth works and vegetation establishment

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland
- OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing to the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement
- WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY THIS OPTION

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.*

Fen is a diverse habitat type with different fen types depending on factors such as water chemistry, soil type, fertility, position in the landscape and historical management.

To create fen appropriately consider the location and landscape setting. Identify the type of fen the option is aiming to create and set objectives and management appropriately.

Decide how best to create fens by taking into account:

- how and where it sits in the wider landscape
- how past modification and management have influenced the fen and the wildlife it supports
- how the fen is supplied with water and how it drains.
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact

Small fen sites are usually fragments of much larger wetlands and semi-natural landscapes so look for opportunities to extend and buffer existing fens by:

- re-wetting areas with drained peat next to them
- blocking or in-filling pipes or ditches that intercept springs or drain the fen

Account for the surroundings and neighbouring habitats to plan more coherent wetland units. Habitats can include lowland raised bog, wet grassland or wet woodland.

The character and condition of a fen is largely determined by water that comes from its catchment. Therefore it is important that surrounding land is managed sympathetically and in ways that will not damage the fen through pollution by nutrients or sediment runoff.

Feasibility and impact should be fully assessed in advance and all appropriate advice and permissions obtained. A detailed implementation plan or feasibility study for the works should be agreed with Natural England.

If the proposed management involves raising water levels, applicants should contact the Environment Agency before applying for this item.

# Management of lowland raised bog (WT10) Higher Tier

## £164 per ha

### Where to use this option

Whole and part-parcel

Only on:

- priority lowland raised bog habitat which can be kept wet enough for peat to form

### Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, drains or dykes that are less than 4m wide
- a pond or standing water that's less than 1ha in total
- rivers and streams that are less than 4m wide in most of the parcel
- bracken beds if control is in the agreement
- 5% cover of scrub or woodland, or if control is included in the agreement

### How this option will benefit the environment

It will help to manage and restore priority lowland raised bog habitat

If successful there will be:

- a rain-fed water table kept close to the surface of the peat
- a cover of characteristic bog vegetation such as sphagnum moss and cotton grass maintained or expanded
- reduced amounts of invasive bracken, scrub or non-native species

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- maintain water levels at the surface of the bog fed only by rainfall
- control scrub and other undesirable species
- dispose of cut material appropriately
- maintain structures that help to control water levels

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except for spot-treating or weed-wiping to control injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

**The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland

- OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland
- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing to the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement
- WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement
- WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS OPTION

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this option.

### Pick a location

This option should only be available for raised bog habitat where:

- a substrate of bog peat remains in place
- the area has a surface irrigated only by rainfall
- high water levels sustained by rainfall can be maintained or restored

### Maintain and restore raised bog

Get expert advice if using this option to pen rain water to raise water levels (smaller sites may only need internal drain blocking).

Drains or streams in adjacent areas may draw water away. Check what other wetland options might help reduce these effects.

If blocking off or diverting water flow associated with neighbouring drains and streams check what impact this might have on adjacent farm owners or occupiers. The Environment Agency should be consulted along with other relevant bodies eg Internal Drainage Boards. It may be necessary to obtain consent.

### Pick a suitable penning structure

Pick water penning structures to suit the size of the drains. Use simple plastic pile or peat plug dams to block small grips and drains or more complex, engineered structures for larger drains. Try extended pile or peat bunds where the surface is either complex or very open and featureless, e.g. after peat milling. Large scale earthworks for rewetting will need careful feasibility study and planning.

### Manage vegetation and water levels

Relatively undisturbed raised bog surfaces are usually more self-sustaining and should require less intervention.

Where sites may have dried out and colonised by trees and scrub, aim to:

- remove up to 95% of native trees, and all invasive non-native species
- keep water levels raised to reduce re-colonisation as birch, conifers and rhododendrons can exacerbate drying out

Control bracken by bruising, cutting or applying herbicides. A longer term solution would be to maintain raised water levels.

## Wetland cutting supplement (WT11) Higher Tier

# £440 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only with one of the following options:

- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports the appropriate cutting management of wetland habitats.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- cut particular areas by an agreed method
- cut at specific times
- dispose of cuttings in an agreed way
- produce a simple map of the areas cut and the dates of cutting

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- map of the areas cut

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED SUPPLEMENTS

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- SP2 – Raised water level supplement
- SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP9 – Threatened species supplement.

## Wetland grazing supplement (WT12) Higher Tier

£304 per ha

### Where to use this supplement

Only with one of the following options:

- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports the appropriate grazing management of wetland habitats.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- graze specific areas by an agreed method
- graze at specific times
- achieve a particular vegetation condition by grazing

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

**The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- SP2 - Raised water level supplement
- SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement
- SP5 – Shepherding supplement
- SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement
- SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing to the Isles of Scilly
- SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement
- SP9 - Threatened species supplement

Section 2:

## **Higher Tier Capital Items**

## Access capital items (AC1) Higher Tier

# Up to 100% of actual cost

### Where to use this item

Only for new structures.

### Where this item cannot be used

- when the agreement holder is obliged to offer structures for public access to the holding
- to maintain existing structures

### How this item will benefit the environment

If successful there will be greater public accessibility of the countryside or enhanced educational visits.

## REQUIREMENTS

- agree with Natural England a detailed specification for the item
- get at least 3 written quotations for the work, making sure they identify associated costs
- have Natural England agree the quote
- create, install and complete the access capital item according to the specification agreed with Natural England

Do not:

- carry out any construction work related to the item unless it has been approved by Natural England

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work
- detailed specification document

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- evidence of demand and need for the access capital item, eg documentation from supporters, potential users and partner organisations
- copies of any planning or other permission
- photograph before works commence
- quotes for completion of the work

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

# Countryside educational access visits accreditation (AC2)

## Higher Tier

### £175 once per agreement

#### Where to use this item

Only on agreements that contain:

- ED1 - Educational access

#### How this item will benefit the environment

This allows one member from the agreement holding to go to a training course and become accredited at carrying out enhanced educational experiences.

If successful there will be consistently positive feedback from attendees on the Farm Visit Evaluation forms.

#### REQUIREMENTS

- send one person from the holding to a [CEVAS training course](http://www.visitmyfarm.org/cevas-farmer-training), <http://www.visitmyfarm.org/cevas-farmer-training>

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a copy of the accreditation certificate – submit this with the claim

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

#### Further information

More details are on the [CEVAS website](http://www.visitmyfarm.org/cevas-farmer-training). <http://www.visitmyfarm.org/cevas-farmer-training>



# Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work (BN9) Higher Tier

## £4.10 per m

### Where to use this supplement

Only on:

- hedgerows being restored using the following options:
  - BN5 - Hedgerow laying
  - BN6 - Hedgerow coppicing
  - BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up
  - BN11 - Planting new hedges
- hedgerows which:
  - have extensive bramble, elder or brash that needs removing
  - are more than 5m wide after the previous season's growth is removed
  - are on a slope of more than 20 degrees

### Where this supplement cannot be used

To:

- remove old fences within hedgerows
- remove free-standing fences alongside hedgerows
- undertake weed control
- undertake routine preparation before gapping-up or planting

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful, lengths of restored hedgerow which required substantial pre-work or were located on difficult sites will be restored.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- carry out the work agreed with Natural England
- complete the associated hedge restoration item to the relevant specification

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants may have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of each length of hedge entered into the supplement
- supply item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED ITEMS

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- BN5 - Hedgerow laying
- BN6 - Hedgerow coppicing
- BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up
- BN8 - Hedgerow supplement - casting up
- BN10 - Hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking

## Stone wall supplement - difficult sites (BN15) Higher Tier

£7.90 per m

### Where to use this supplement

Only on walls being rebuilt using the BN12 - Stone wall restoration item.

The walls must be one of the following:

- on a slope with an incline of more than 30 degrees
- greater than 1.6m in height
- in an inaccessible or remote location, e.g. a considerable distance from a track or situated on boggy ground

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful there will be a rebuilt stone wall which will help to control livestock and conserve traditional landscapes.

## REQUIREMENTS

- restore the wall as specified by the BN12 - Stone wall restoration item

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants may have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of each length of wall to be restored

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED ITEMS

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- BN12 - Stone wall restoration
- BN13 - Stone wall supplement - top wiring
- BN14 - Stone wall supplement - stone from quarry

# Fencing supplement - difficult sites (FG5) Higher Tier

## £1.24 per m

### Where to use this supplement

Only with:

- FG1 - Fencing
- FG2 - Sheep netting
- FG3 - Permanent electric fencing
- FG7 - Anti-predator combination fencing
- FG8 - Anti-predator temporary electric fencing
- FG9 - Deer fencing

### How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful this supplement will help control livestock, protect environmental features and help to manage habitats on difficult sites.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- complete the associated fencing to the relevant standard
- agree a specification for the works with Natural England
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants may have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the existing site

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED ITEMS

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following supplements:

- FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS SUPPLEMENT

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Pick the right location

This use of this item is justified where the site being fenced:

- is remote
- cannot be accessed by vehicles
- is on steep slopes
- is prone to flooding or waterlogged for large parts of the year
- is in need of a lot of ground preparation

# Invisible fencing system (FG6) Higher Tier

THIS ITEM IS NOT AVAILABLE FOR USE UNTIL FURTHER NOTICE

## £1.80 per m

### Where to use this item

With a land management option and one of the following:

- the introduction of a new management regime to the agreement area
- a substantial change in grazing management

It can only be used when it is not possible to introduce traditional wooden or wire fencing alone, such as when:

- it would damage historic or archaeological features
- the land is common land or other open access land
- there are significant and overriding open landscape priorities, meaning normal post and wire fencing would be too visually intrusive, or would provoke significant local opposition

### How this item will benefit the environment

It helps to achieve more effective management of priority habitats or landscape enhancement, without the negative landscape effect of a conventional post and wire fence line.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England in year 1 of the agreement a specification and precise location for the invisible fencing. The works should be completed as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### Further information

The payment for this item does not include the cost of the animal collars and GPS transponder units that are required when using this approach. These costs may be eligible for funding using the FM2 capital item; Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species.

## Anti-predator combination fencing (FG7) Higher Tier

£11.10 per m

### Where to use this item

Only:

- on dry open grassland habitat used by breeding stone-curlew – in conjunction with a grassland option
- in a national breeding wader target area or where there are significant numbers of breeding waders – in conjunction with the management or creation of lowland wet grassland for breeding wader options (GS9 and GS11)
- on certain coastal habitats (such as shingle) used by breeding seabirds, especially terns

### Where this item cannot be used

On historic or archaeological features without specialist approval, such as from the county archaeologist or Historic England

### How this item will benefit the environment

It increases the productivity of priority ground-nesting birds when used with effective habitat management.

## REQUIREMENTS

- agree with Natural England a specification for the fencing in Year 1 of the agreement
- create a permanent anti-predator combination fence that meets the specification and timings as agreed with Natural England
- check regularly that target predators are absent from the enclosure
- prevent vegetation from touching the fence's live wires

### Fence specification

The fence is likely to:

- be buried about 25 cm deep into the ground using a trenching machine
- extend at least 1m above ground
- have electric wires set at around 65cm, 115cm, 130cm and 150cm above ground level, offset 5cm to 10 cm out from the post

Do not:

- allow the fence to restrict or block access to [open access land](https://www.gov.uk/right-of-way-open-access-land/use-your-right-to-roam), <https://www.gov.uk/right-of-way-open-access-land/use-your-right-to-roam>

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work
- detailed specification must be provided (by the end of year 1)
- records of the number of breeding pairs and breeding productivity of target species within and (as far as possible) outside the fence

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the site
- written support from Natural England for the use of this capital item
- consent from the Local Authority or Historic Environments Record Office if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## **ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM**

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### **Constructing the fence**

This item can also be used as a stock fence but this item should only be used when fencing is needed at the same location each year.

Anti-predator fences are effective only against large ground predators such as foxes, badgers and hedgehogs. This item should be used alongside effective habitat management and when predators are likely to limit the productivity of the target species.

When constructing the fence it is necessary to:

- make sure that the fence surrounds a nesting and chick feeding habitat that benefits the target species
- place fencing away from tall vegetation
- leave enough space between the fence and boundary for vegetation management
- modify gates to stop predators getting through, over or under them

### **Maintaining the fence**

Regular inspections are needed to ensure that:

- vegetation is not touching the fence
- the voltage is at the required level
- the structure is maintained to the required specification
- no target predators are in the enclosed area

The Natural England adviser will advise on how frequently these visits are needed (usually at least once a week when birds are nesting) and whether the power should be left on all year.

Control vegetation before it touches the bottom wire. Strim first under the fence line, then apply herbicide.

### **Licences**

A disturbance licence will be needed if working near Schedule 1 species, such as stone curlew and little tern.

# Anti-predator temporary electric fencing (FG8) Higher Tier

## £2.85 per m

### Where to use this item

Only:

- on lowland wet grassland used by breeding waders - but only when practical reasons prevent the use of FG7 - Anti-predator permanent combination fencing
- on certain coastal habitats (such as shingle) used by breeding seabirds, especially terns
- on breeding stone-curlew habitats within grassland and arable land, where both of the following apply:
  - combination fencing cannot be used
  - predatory mammals are known to be limiting productivity

### Where this item cannot be used

On historic or archaeological features without specialist approval, such as from the county archaeologist or Historic England

### How this item will benefit the environment

It increases the productivity of priority ground-nesting birds when used with effective habitat management.

## REQUIREMENTS

- agree with Natural England a specification for the fence in Year 1 of the agreement
- create a temporary electric anti-predator fence that meets the specification and timings as agreed with Natural England
- regularly check that target predators are absent from the enclosure
- prevent vegetation from touching the fence's live wires

### Fence specification

The fence is likely to have:

- set wires at 5cm (live), 15cm (earthed), and then with alternate live and earthed wires set at 10cm intervals up to a height of 1.1m, with an additional live wire at 1.5m
- wires held by extended insulators
- a multi-strand top wire coloured white (to increase its visibility to deer and birds)

Do not:

- restrict or block access to [open access land](https://www.gov.uk/right-of-way-open-access-land/use-your-right-to-roam), <https://www.gov.uk/right-of-way-open-access-land/use-your-right-to-roam>

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- a detailed specification
- records of the number of breeding pairs and breeding productivity of target species within and (as far as possible) outside the fence

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the site
- written support from Natural England for the use of this capital item
- item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Constructing the fence

Temporary electric anti-predator fencing is best for sites where the fencing cannot be left out all year, or where re-location of the fencing is necessary from year to year.

Anti-predator fences are effective only against large ground predators such as foxes, badgers and hedgehogs. This item should be used alongside effective habitat management and when predators are likely to limit the productivity of the target species.

Where possible the fence should be erected before breeding starts. If this is not possible it will need to be installed with minimal disturbance to the birds. Get a disturbance licence from Natural England if needed for Schedule 1 species, such as stone curlew and little tern.

When constructing the fence it is necessary to:

- make sure that the fence surrounds a nesting and chick feeding habitat that benefits the target species
- place fencing away from tall vegetation
- leave enough space between the fence and boundary for vegetation management
- modify gates to stop predators getting through, over or under them

### Maintaining the fence

Regular inspections are needed to ensure that:

- vegetation is not touching the fence
- the voltage is at the required level
- the structure is maintained to the required specification
- no target predators are in the enclosed area

Natural England will advise on how frequently these visits are needed (usually at least once a week when birds are nesting).

Control vegetation before it touches the bottom wire. Strim first under the fence line, then apply herbicide.



## Deer fencing (FG9) Higher Tier

# £7.20 per m

### Where to use this item

Only on woodland.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will protect newly created or existing woodland from deer browsing as part of a wider woodland creation or woodland management project.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreements holders are likely to need to:

- meet the fence specifications set out in the tables below (and in the Forestry Commission's technical guide [Forest Fencing](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/fctgoo2.pdf/%24FILE/fctgoo2.pdf), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/fctgoo2.pdf/%24FILE/fctgoo2.pdf>)
- clear debris from the line of the fence
- make the line of the fence smooth enough that the bottom of the fence sits with the ground (there must be no gaps that deer can enter through)
- make sure the fence is regularly inspected
- maintain the fence so that deer cannot enter the land until the trees are large enough that they no longer need to be protected

### Specifications for the fence's woodwork

Species of deer	Endposts and turning posts (m by cm)	Struts (m by cm)	Intermediate stakes (m by cm)	Maximum stake spacing (m)
Roe	2.8 by 10 to 13	2.5 by 8 to 10	2.5 by 5 to 8	10
Muntjac	2.8 by 10 to 13	2.5 by 8 to 10	2.5 by 5 to 8	10
Red/sika/fallow	2.8 by 12 to 18	2.5 by 10 to 13	2.6 by 8 to 10	10

### Specifications for the height of the fence and the size of the mesh

Species of deer	Minimum fence height (m)	Maximum mesh size (mm)
Red and sika	1.8	200 by 300
Fallow	1.8	200 by 220
Roe	1.5	200 by 150
Muntjac	1.5	75 by 75

### What the management plan needs to include

If this item is being used on an existing woodland site, the management plan needs to identify that deer are present on the site and are a threat to it. A woodland management plan is not required where this item is being used to protect newly planted trees using capital item TE4 - Supply and plant tree.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED ITEMS

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement
- FG5 - Fencing supplement - difficult sites
- FG14 - Badger gate
- FG15 - Water gates

# Temporary deer fencing (FG10) Higher Tier

## £5.20 per m

### Where to use this item

Only on newly created or existing woodland

### Where this item cannot be used

To protect newly planted woodland supported by item TE4 - Supply and plant tree.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will protect newly coppiced woodland from deer browsing as part of a wider woodland management project.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to make sure the fence:

- protects newly coppiced woodland
- meets the specifications set out in the table below (and in the Forestry Commission's practice note, [Recommendations for Fallow, Roe and Muntjac Deer Fencing](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/PDF/fcpn9.pdf/%24File/fcpn9.pdf), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/PDF/fcpn9.pdf/%24File/fcpn9.pdf>)
- is erected as soon as possible after coppicing has taken place and before stools have started to grow again
- has a line that is clear of debris
- has a line that is smooth enough that the bottom of the fence sits with the ground (there must be no gaps that deer can get through)
- is maintained so that deer cannot enter the land until the coppice re-growth is large enough that it no longer needs to be protected

### Specifications for the height and mesh size of temporary fences

Species of deer	Minimum fence height (m)	Maximum mesh size (mm)
Fallow	1.5	200 by 220
Roe	1.5	200 by 150
Muntjac	1.5	75 by 75

### What the management plan needs to include

Where the item is used on an existing woodland site, the management plan needs to identify that deer are present on the site in large numbers and are a threat to it.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

# Deer enclosure plot (FG11) Higher Tier

## £136 per unit

### Where to use this item

Only on woodland, wood pasture, scrub, heathland, and moorland or grassland restoration to protect regeneration of woody species from deer browsing.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will protect areas of woodland that are approximately 16 square metres in size from deer browsing. This will allow monitoring of the area's regeneration potential and the impact of browsing.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- erect a deer enclosure plot that is at least 1.8m high by 4m by 4m
- make sure the fence meets the specifications set out in the Forestry Commission's technical guide, [Forest Fencing](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/fctgoo2.pdf/%24FILE/fctgoo2.pdf) but with no gates <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/fctgoo2.pdf/%24FILE/fctgoo2.pdf>
- make sure the fence is inspected at least once a year
- maintain the fence so that deer cannot enter the site for the length of the agreement
- make sure that stakes are large enough to support the enclosure plot for the length of the agreement
- replace any stakes or fencing materials that become damaged during the term of the agreement
- clear debris from the line of the fence
- make the line of the fence smooth enough that the bottom of the fence sits with the ground (there must be no gaps that deer can get through)

### What the management plan needs to include

The management plan needs to identify that deer are present on the site and are a threat to it.

Do not:

- cut any vegetation inside the plot

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### How to choose a site

Choose a site within the woodland where it is reasonable to expect the regeneration of trees, shrubs and flowers to take place, but where this is not currently happening. The area should receive enough light for regeneration to occur.

## Stone gate post (FG13) Higher Tier

### £280 per post

#### Where to use this item

Only in conjunction with boundary restoration items or item FG12 - Wooden field gate. It can only be used if stone gate posts are traditional in the area.

#### Where this item cannot be used

On sites of historic or archaeological interest

#### How this item will benefit the environment

It will help conserve local landscape character and sites of historic interest by establishing stone gate posts made from local materials in local styles.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to set up a stone or slate gate post in the local material, cut or tooled to the size and shape typical of the local area.

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Photographs of the proposed location of the new gate posts.

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

#### Existing gate posts

Existing gate posts from another location on the holding should not be used.

# Management of geodiversity features (FM1) Higher Tier

## Up to 100% of actual costs

### Where to use this item

Only on:

- Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) where land management options are included in the agreement

### How this item will benefit the environment

If successful this item will ensure sensitive geological features are managed positively and protected from damage.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in Year 1 of the agreement
- get at least 3 written quotations for completion of the work, identifying associated costs, and agree the selected quotation with NE
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- photograph before works commence

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

Use this item to:

- protect sensitive geological features and to remove geological material at risk
- conserve geological features by removing trees, scrub, scree, spoil and other items from exposures
- control access to geological features

# Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species (FM2) Higher Tier

## Up to 100% of actual costs

### Where to use this item

Only:

- with a land management option where a [priority species](http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/4958719460769792), <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/4958719460769792> is known to be present, or occurs locally and the work is likely to lead to its colonisation – the work needs written support from a recognised specialist (either an individual or organisation) on the species
- when the need for major preparatory works is identified in an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study approved by Natural England
- to create or enhance a [priority habitat](http://jncc.defra.gov.uk/page-5706) along with a land management option <http://jncc.defra.gov.uk/page-5706>

### How this item will benefit the environment

If successful this item will result in large scale restoration and creation of priority habitats and bespoke management for priority species.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- when necessary, agree with Natural England a detailed specification for the works in year 1 of the agreement
- get at least 3 written quotations for completion of the work, identifying associated costs, and agree the selected quotation with Natural England
- complete the works in the approved specification, implementation plan or feasibility study within the agreed timescale

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- a copy of the implementation plan or feasibility study, when necessary
- photographs before works commence
- item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY THIS ITEM

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.

### Moorland management option

Applicants can use this item with UP3 - Management of moorland option to fund:

- restoring and stabilising bare peat - seeding, geo-textiles, plug planting, re-profiling and sphagnum inoculation
- enhancing wet heath - plug plants, sphagnum, geo-textiles, and stone or wooden dams for gully works
- heath restoration works by removing conifers
- the cost of transporting materials over sensitive moorland habitats, such as blanket bog

### Other land management

Applicants can use this item with other land management options to fund:

- specific plug plants (food plants for invertebrate species, such as barberry for barberry carpet moth, hogs fennel for fisher's estuarine moth, tailored seed mixes for short-haired bumble bee)
- native British seed mixes (sourced from wild populations) to increase plant diversity by:
  - over-sowing with an agreed seed mix or green hay
  - spreading brash or plug planting along with habitat creation or restoration
  - the cost of collecting, transporting and spreading hay or brash
  - creating coastal habitat, including inter-tidal habitat ('managed realignment')
  - creating shingle islands for species such as tern or avocet
  - creating and enhancing lowland heath - clearing bracken litter and humus, preparing ground, spreading heather cuttings or seeds, and creating bare ground
  - restoring and maintaining natural river processes in a floodplain
  - hiring and transporting specialist equipment for preparatory work for priority species habitat management
  - maintenance costs for hiring, purchasing or maintaining equipment that helps priority species to thrive, such as:
    - maintaining electric fencing on breeding lapwing plots
    - maintaining mobile batteries for electric fencing
    - keeping grass cut to stop shorting of electric fence
    - regular equipment maintenance

### Where this item cannot be used

This item cannot be used to fund:

- any work within the scope of standard options or capital items
- certified agricultural seed, amenity grass seed or legume varieties seed, even if these are species found in the wild, unless the seed is used:
  - to restore bare peat on moorland
  - where agricultural or amenity grasses are used as a nurse crop to establish moorland vegetation



## Deer high seat (FY1) Higher Tier

### £300 per unit

#### Where this item cannot be used

Where deer fencing has already been erected to keep deer out of the area.

#### How this item will benefit the environment

It will provide a safe, temporary vantage point from which to cull deer, reducing the impact their browsing has on the land.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to consider:

- the health and safety of non-authorised users of the seat - e.g. prominently display British Standard signs prohibiting public access
- the health and safety of authorised users – e.g. make sure the seat has safety bars, is of an adequate size, and is securely attached to the anchor point
- the protection of the tree, if a tree is used as an anchor point - e.g. use webbing strops, rather than wire and nails, to attach the seat to the tree

The high seat must be portable, free-standing and made from galvanised tubular or box-section steel.

#### What the management plan needs to include

The woodland management plan needs to identify that there is a high deer population posing a threat to the woodland.

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

#### Further information

Find more information about constructing high seats in The Deer Initiative's best practice guide.

<http://www.thedeerinitiative.co.uk/uploads/guides/162.pdf>

## Woodland infrastructure (FY2) Higher Tier

### 40% of actual costs

#### How this item will benefit the environment

It will make woodlands more accessible by road, allowing timber and other forest products to be moved more easily. This will improve the management of the woodland.

#### REQUIREMENTS

An existing FC approved woodland management plan must identify that poor vehicle access to the woodland is preventing the movement of timber and other forest products.

Agreement holders are likely to need to prepare a detailed specification, tailored to the site. The specification needs to set out the work that will be carried out on site, the volume of timber that is expected to be produced and the soil conditions on the site.

The work could include the construction and maintenance of:

- extraction tracks for mechanised timber extraction to a transfer point
- haulage roads and turning points
- haulage road entrances or laybys
- profiling and paving timber transfer points and stacking areas
- culverts and other road and track side drainage
- woodland security, such as gates, for new entrance points

The specification needs to meet the FC's construction, design and management (CDM) regulations for forest roads and tracks. Further information about the CDM regulations is available in [Operations Note 25](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/ONo25-ForestRoadsandTracksv1.oissued110809.pdf/%24FILE/ONo25-ForestRoadsandTracksv1.oissued110809.pdf). <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/ONo25-ForestRoadsandTracksv1.oissued110809.pdf/%24FILE/ONo25-ForestRoadsandTracksv1.oissued110809.pdf>

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- Forestry Commission Management Plan
- photograph before works commence
- consent from local planning authority if required

Before applying for this item applicants must notify the local planning authority so it can determine whether the work can be classified as a [permitted development](https://www.gov.uk/planning-permissions-for-farms/permitted-development), <https://www.gov.uk/planning-permissions-for-farms/permitted-development>. This requires the applicant to submit a description of the work to the local authority.

Permitted developments do not require full planning permission. The requirement for full planning permission is dependent on proximity to the public highway or designations on the site. Full planning permission is required where a new access is constructed from a classified public highway.

Obtain consent for work from the Local Planning Authority (or internal drainage boards within an internal drainage district) where the road crosses a watercourse or uses culverts during construction, use or maintenance. Applicants must send a copy of the Local Planning Authority's advice and any permits with their application.

The Forestry Commission will decide whether the work requires consent under the [Environmental Impact Assessment \(Forestry\) Regulations](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/england-eia), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/england-eia>. This is dependent on whether the proposal will have a significant effect on the environment.

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## Up to 100% of actual costs

### Where to use this item

Only for work to conserve or protect individual historic environment features when physical work is needed to change land management practices or restore a site.

### Where this item cannot be used

- for work related to historic (roofed) buildings
- for management plans for parklands, historic features or areas – use PA2 - Feasibility Study
- for work previously funded under an agri-environment scheme

### How this item will benefit the environment

It is for physical works that directly relate to conserving or protecting historic environment features in the landscape. This will help the long-term survival of historic and archaeological features.

## REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification with Natural England and then send at least 3 written quotations identifying all associated costs for completing the work in line with the specification
- agree the selected quotation with Natural England
- complete the work as set out in the approved specification within the agreed time
- get any relevant consents before carrying out the work, such as scheduled monument consent from Historic England or listed building consent from the local planning authority

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs to show completed works
- a detailed specification

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- photographs of the feature
- item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Historic and archaeological features

Some historic environment features or areas are suffering from damage or loss. A land management option alone may not be enough, or may not be suitable, to make the management changes needed to protect the feature from further harm. The feature may also need restoration work.

This item supports this by funding work such as:

- moving fence lines or all-terrain vehicle tracks if they currently run across an archaeological site
- moving feed sites and restoring the surface
- clearing vegetation and restoring eroded surfaces
- consolidating structures, such as ruins or bridges, that are not eligible for HE2 - Historic building restoration
- de-silting designed water-bodies
- archaeological excavation, if it is needed to preserve 'by record' known archaeology which would be affected by agreed management on the site.

Information on the location of Scheduled Monuments, registered parks and gardens, registered battlefields and listed buildings, as well as undesignated historic and archaeological features can be found on:

- the Historic England annual **Heritage at Risk register**, <https://www.historicengland.org.uk/advice/heritage-at-risk> - this identifies historic environment features at high risk from loss or damage
- the **MAGIC website** for information in map form <http://magic.defra.gov.uk/>
- the **Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England** website
- the county **historic environment record**, <http://www.heritagegateway.org.uk/gateway/>

### **Complex sites**

There is no standard specification for this item as all work will need to be tailored to the individual site. For complex situations or sites a management plan may be required and can be funded through PA2 - Feasibility Study.

### **Further information**

Further information can be found from Historic England's **Farming the historic landscape** booklet. <https://historicengland.org.uk/images-books/publications/farming-historic-landscape-introduction-for-farm-advisers/>

## Historic building restoration (HE2) Higher Tier

THIS ITEM IS NOT CURRENTLY AVAILABLE

### Up to 80% of actual costs

#### Where to use this item

Only on roofed buildings, identified as a priority by Natural England for funding within Countryside Stewardship, that will be repaired in line with historic building restoration guidance principles. These are:

- non-residential buildings built with traditional materials and methods in a characteristic local, vernacular or 'designed' architectural style
- ornamental or architecturally designed buildings – for example, those on model farms, or in parklands or designed landscapes
- 'transitional buildings', buildings that show the introduction of modern materials, but are otherwise in traditional materials, style and function - written support from a Natural England historic environment adviser will be needed
- buildings of historic significance, whether traditional or later construction - for example, late-19th to early-20th century Dutch barns (curved head barns), mine buildings or military buildings, such as World War 2 pillboxes
- unconverted historic buildings used in ways they were not originally designed for, but without affecting the historic integrity and character - for example, light industrial, educational access or livery use

#### Where this item cannot be used

- for agreements starting January 2018
- on modern buildings made from concrete, timber or steel frames and clad in materials such as concrete, breeze blocks, tiles, fibre cement sheeting or profiled metal sheeting
- on structures such as bridges
- on ruined buildings (more than 50% of the building has been lost)
- on converted historic buildings - such as to residential, holiday accommodation or commercial use - or a home's ancillary building, such as garages
- on buildings previously funded under an agri-environment scheme

#### How this item will benefit the environment

It is for conserving and lengthening the life of rural buildings that contribute to the character and enjoyment of the landscape and are of historic interest.

The work will prevent further decay to the fabric of historic buildings and benefit their long-term survival.

#### REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification with Natural England and then send at least 3 written quotations identifying all associated costs for completing the work in line with the specification
- agree the selected quotation with Natural England
- complete the work as set out in the approved specification within the agreed time
- get any relevant consents before carrying out the work, such as scheduled monument consent from Historic England or listed building consent from the local planning authority

#### Protecting and maintaining the buildings

After the work has been completed the building will need to be protected and maintained in a weatherproof condition. This includes fixtures and fittings and nearby associated features, such as mounting blocks and stack or stook bases.

The character of the building, in its local setting, will need to be kept – with maintenance works and minor repairs carried out on a like-for-like basis using traditional material and methods.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works;
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- photographs of the building
- A Historic Buildings Information Form (available from Natural England) must be completed, and will be used to help assess the priority of buildings for funding.

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

There is no standard specification for building restoration and all work will be tailored to the individual site. A specification will need to be agreed with Natural England.

Before applying for this item a management plan will normally be required to identify the restoration work and costs, and can be applied for through PA2 - Feasibility study.

## Project planning

Guidance on restoring and repairing historic buildings will be available in 2016. It will explain which work is eligible and the repair principles to follow.

This item cannot be used for management plans for historic building restoration - use PA2 - Feasibility Study.

## Further information

Historic England has a [guide to restoring and maintaining historic farm buildings](https://www.historicengland.org.uk/advice/planning/local-heritage/helm-redirect). <https://www.historicengland.org.uk/advice/planning/local-heritage/helm-redirect>

There is a lot of competition for this capital item. Any buildings applied for will be assessed separately to identify the best and highest priority historic building restoration projects.

The assessment will include thinking about how the building:

- adds to the area's landscape character
- can offer or retain wildlife habitat or nest sites
- offers the public access

Natural England will also look at:

- the sort of work that needs doing
- how urgent the repair work is
- whether Countryside Stewardship is the most appropriate grant for restoring the building - this is because it cannot be used to fund converting the building to an alternative use, such as residential or commercial use

## Removal of eyesore (HE3) Higher Tier

### £290 per item

#### Where to use this item

Only with a land management option

#### Where this item cannot be used

- for routine clearing and maintenance
- if clearance is required, such as for health and safety or cross compliance reasons

#### How this item will benefit the environment

It removes and disposes of unsightly items which have a negative effect on the landscape.

### REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in Year 1 of the agreement
- complete the works as set out in the agreed specification within the agreed timescale

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the eyesore to be removed
- item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**



## Cattle grid (LV1) Higher Tier

# £835 per item

### Where to use this item

Only when:

- a new management regime is being introduced to a site
- a substantial change in grazing management is needed

### Where this item cannot be used

To place cattle grids on:

- public highways
- public rights of way

### How this item will benefit the environment

It creates environmental benefits by aiding grazing management. Benefits include better management of priority habitats or landscape enhancement.

## REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in Year 1 of the agreement
- complete the works as set out in the agreed specification within the agreed timescale

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- specification of agreed works

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the location where the cattle grid is planned

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## Livestock handling facilities (LV2) Higher Tier

# Up to 80% of actual costs

### Where to use this item

Only in conjunction with a land management option and if:

- a new management regime is being introduced on the site
- a substantial change in grazing management is needed
- livestock handling facilities are essential for carrying out the associated land management option

### Where this item cannot be used

Where:

- existing handling facilities are available
- the site is not grazed
- it will damage historic and archaeological features
- it will damage peat exposures or other sensitive soils
- it will lead to poaching (trampling) damage

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will help to improve grazing management.

## REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in the first year of the agreement
- get at least 3 written quotations for the cost of the works. Agree the selected quotation with Natural England
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale
- erect permanent posts in the locations where mobile facilities will be used
- provide a map of the locations where mobile facilities will be used

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs to show the completed works
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements for more detail

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- written details of where mobile facilities will be stored when they are not in use

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### **How to construct livestock handling facilities**

This item will typically fund handling pens for cattle, and holding pens and shedding race for sheep.

Agree on a design and location with the adviser. Choose a design and construction materials that blend in with the local landscape.

When choosing a site, make sure that there is no damage to other features or natural resources. Ensure that poaching or vehicle access do not cause ground disturbance in the vicinity of the site.

# Constructed wetlands for the treatment of pollution (RP8)

## Higher Tier

### 50% of costs

#### Where to use this item

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- to treat field and farmyard diffuse runoff
- in conjunction with a Feasibility Study or a CSF commissioned design plan

#### Where this item cannot be used

- to treat slurry, silage liquor, heavily fouled water, or concentrated pesticide spills and washings (as defined as such under the Nitrate Action Plan Regulations, Slurry Silage and Agricultural Fuel Oil Regulations or Health and Safety Executive)
- on historic or archaeological features identified in the HEFER
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA), or Internal Drainage Board

#### How this item will benefit the environment

It will create and maintain a wetland features to treat lightly fouled or polluted water, generated from normal agricultural activities. This will help reduce the risk of sediment and other pollutants entering a nearby watercourse.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- complete works according to the specification set out in the Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study and as agreed with a Natural England adviser
- follow the instructions set in a management plan (agreed with a Natural England adviser) for constructing and maintaining the wetland area
- get 3 quotes for completion of the work, with a statement outlining reasons for the chosen quote, and agree the selected quotation with Natural England

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely successful applicants will not be allowed to:

- place spoil on any environmental, historic or archaeological feature

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works;
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed.

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency, Local Planning Authority and where relevant the Internal Drainage Board to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for completion of the work
- photographs of the site before the work takes place
- a copy of any advice or consent received from the EA and (where relevant) the Internal Drainage Board
- a copy of the Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.

### Specification

A detailed specification will be produced, tailored to the site. A likely design would be a treatment structure built in at least 3 stages.

#### Stage 1

The first stage is to create an open pond to act as a sediment trap without much wildlife value. The pond should be accessible to farm machinery for routine maintenance.

#### Stage 2

The second stage should have some planting to encourage settlement and remove nutrients.

#### Stage 3

The third stage should be a shallow wetland that is heavily vegetated to reduce pollutants in the water such as:

- nitrates or ammonia
- biological oxygen demand (BOD)
- faecal indicator organisms (FIOs)

### Throughout each stage

- restrict livestock access to reduce the risk of eroding or degrading the treatment area
- build on a non-permeable substrate (made up of 20% clay) or line the area so that there is a permanent pool of water for most of the year
- avoid building on sandy, gravelly and excessively wet soil in order to prevent contact with groundwater before treatment
- build gentle slopes with a gradient of no more than 1 in 4, the edges should provide good wildlife habitat and act as a safety feature
- make sure the pond edges are undulated to provide more edge habitat
- make sure outlet pipes are larger than inlet pipes to prevent water backing up along the system
- obtain a waste exemption if excavated material is to be removed (this information should be included in the agreed management plan)

### Manage outfall

- ensure any outfall of water is of high enough quality before it is discharged into the local watercourse

Applicants will need to agree acceptable water quality standard with EA before directing any outfall.

### Further information

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. Find out more about [CSF support](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/catchment-sensitive-farming-reduce-agricultural-water-pollution). <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/catchment-sensitive-farming-reduce-agricultural-water-pollution>

Read the [constructed wetland user guide](http://www.wwt.org.uk/uploads/documents/1429707026_WWTConstructedFarmWetlands150422.pdf), [http://www.wwt.org.uk/uploads/documents/1429707026\\_WWTConstructedFarmWetlands150422.pdf](http://www.wwt.org.uk/uploads/documents/1429707026_WWTConstructedFarmWetlands150422.pdf) produced by the Wildfowl and Wetland Trust for further help carrying out this option.

# Equipment to disrupt tramlines in arable areas (RP31)

## Higher Tier

### £1,500 per machine

#### Where to use this item

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- on farms with crops or fields, identified as at risk of soil erosion in the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- to purchase one piece of equipment

Applicants must have support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer to use this item.

#### How this item will benefit the environment

It will support the purchase of equipment that can loosen soil that has compacted in wheeled tramlines. This will help reduce surface runoff, risk of soil erosion damage and water pollution.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to:

- need to purchase a spiked or rotary harrow, or tine device that can have a direct loosening effect on compacted soil in the wheeled tramline area.

Make sure the device is built to attach directly to one of the following:

- a tractor
- a sprayer being towed behind a tractor
- a self-propelled sprayer

#### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the purchased equipment
- a delivery note with serial number for the equipment

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- report by adviser indicating that the eligibility has been met

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

#### Pick a location

Areas most likely to benefit from this item include:

- fields that are connected to bodies of water at risk of failing water framework directive requirements due to diffuse water pollution from agriculture (DWPA)
- designated sites that are failing their condition assessment due to DWPA
- fields that are at risk of soil erosion:
  - as identified in the FER
  - where slopes are complex or are inclined at more than 3 degrees

Seek advice from an agronomist or farm adviser who holds a BASIS soil and water management certificate, or equivalent.

### Choose the right equipment

Choose a device:

- that has a direct loosening effect on compacted soil within the wheeled tramline area, which will improve surface infiltration and increase surface roughness
- that creates diagonally offset holes ('pock marks') to infiltrate the topsoil to a depth of between 7.5cm and 16.5cm

Where a rotary harrow is selected the wheel should be rimmed with spikes that are offset to each other and at a right angle to the direction of travel.

### How to use the equipment

The equipment should be used:

- with correctly inflated tyres to reduce tyre compaction within the tramline area
- when machinery passes over the soil for the first time or soon after, such as during the first spray operation

### Use this item with other measures

This item should be used with other measures that reduce soil erosion and water runoff. These items and options include:

- in-field grass areas
- double headlands to disconnect water pathways

### Further information

Find further information on [sustainable soil husbandry and the identification of soil erosion issues](http://www.ahdb.org.uk/projects/documents/ThinkSoils.pdf). <http://www.ahdb.org.uk/projects/documents/ThinkSoils.pdf>

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](https://www.gov.uk/guidance/catchment-sensitive-farming-reduce-agricultural-water-pollution). <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/catchment-sensitive-farming-reduce-agricultural-water-pollution>

# Small leaky woody dams (RP32)

## £461.39 for each dam

### Where to use this item

Only:

- in catchments targeted for flood risk measures
- for dams in streams and river channels between 1m and 2.99m
- where approved by the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority

### How this item will benefit the environment

Leaky woody dams will slow the movement of water and help push flows onto the floodplain during floods. This will increase temporary storage of flood waters within water channels and out on to the floodplain, help delay the passage of flood water downstream, allow sediment to settle out, and reduce downstream flood risk.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to:

- follow the indicative drawings in the **Higher Tier manual Annex 2** for maximum effectiveness
- construct the dam from logs large enough to span the water channel and out on to the floodplain to provide a stable and long-lasting structure
- secure the dam in line with the requirements of the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority
- align dams at right angles to channel banks to reduce bank scour
- build dams to allow low flows to pass unimpeded at all times
- site dams on slow flowing reaches of the water course that have on average 2m of floodplain on either side
- build dams to a height sufficient to encourage water to spread onto the floodplain upstream of the dam
- build dams in series (minimum 3 dams) at a spacing between dams of about 5-7 times the width of the channel
- make sure dams are not installed directly upstream of pinch points such as bridges or culverts that back up flows and are likely to swamp the dam
- check and maintain dams to keep the structure effective
- follow the requirements set out in any Feasibility Study or CSF Design Plan

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- a copy of any feasibility study, or woodland management plan where applicable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of the construction or build; or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works;
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed.

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency and where relevant the Lead Local Flood Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work.



Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- a copy of any advice or consent received from the EA, and (where relevant) the Lead Local Flood Authority
- photographs of the existing site
- a copy of any Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

Detailed design can vary and the siting of leaky woody dams in natural water courses will be dictated by local circumstances and availability of or easy access to import suitable materials to site. **Higher Tier manual Annex 2** has details of indicative design of dams.

### Check the dams for silt

The dam will need to be checked and may need de-silted regularly to prevent it collecting large amounts of silt.

### Further information

The management of water on the land can be improved by using Rural Sustainable Drainage Systems (RSuDS). See the guide to RSuDS for more information -

[https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment\\_data/file/291508/schoo612buwh-e-e.pdf](https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/291508/schoo612buwh-e-e.pdf)

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on CSF support at:

<https://www.gov.uk/catchment-sensitive-farming-reduce-agricultural-water-pollution>

# Large leaky woody dams (RP33)

## £764.42 for each dam

### Where to use this item

Only:

- in catchments targeted for flood risk measures
- for dams in streams and river channels between 3m and 5m
- where approved by the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority

### How this item will benefit the environment

Leaky woody dams will slow the movement of water and help push flows onto the floodplain during floods. This will increase temporary storage of flood waters within water channels and out on to the floodplain, help delay the passage of flood water downstream, allow sediment to settle out, and reduce downstream flood risk.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to:

- follow the indicative drawings in the **Higher Tier manual Annex 2** for maximum effectiveness
- construct the dam from logs large enough to span the water channel and out on to the floodplain to provide a stable and long-lasting structure
- secure the dam in line with the requirements of the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority
- align dams at right angles to channel banks to reduce bank scour
- build dams to allow low flows to pass unimpeded at all times
- site dams on slow flowing reaches of the water course that have on average 2m of floodplain on either side
- build dams to a height sufficient to encourage water to spread onto the floodplain upstream of the dam
- build dams in series (minimum 3 dams) at a spacing between dams of about 5-7 times the width of the channel
- make sure dams are not installed directly upstream of pinch points such as bridges or culverts that back up flows and are likely to swamp the dam
- check and maintain dams to keep the structure effective
- follow the requirements set out in any Feasibility Study or CSF Design Plan

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- a copy of any feasibility study, or woodland management plan where applicable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of the construction or build; or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works;
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed.

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency and where relevant the Lead Local Flood Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- a copy of any advice or consent received from the EA, and (where relevant) the Lead Local Flood Authority
- photographs of the existing site
- a copy of any Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

Detailed design can vary and the siting of leaky woody dams in natural water courses will be dictated by local circumstances and availability of or easy access to import suitable materials to site. **Higher Tier manual Annex 2** has details of indicative design of dams.

### Check the dams for silt

The dam will need to be checked and may need de-silted regularly to prevent it collecting large amounts of silt.

### Further information

The management of water on the land can be improved by using Rural Sustainable Drainage Systems (RSuDS). See the guide to RSuDS for more information -

[https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment\\_data/file/291508/schoo612buwh-e-e.pdf](https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/291508/schoo612buwh-e-e.pdf)

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on CSF support at

<https://www.gov.uk/catchment-sensitive-farming-reduce-agricultural-water-pollution>

# Scrub control and felling diseased trees (SB1) Higher Tier

## Payment rates

Method of removal	Stem diameter	Percentage covered per ha	Payment per ha
Machine cut	Less than 7cm	Under 50%	£260
Machine cut	Less than 7cm	50% and over	£520
Machine cut	7cm and above	Under 50%	£520
Machine cut	7cm and above	50% and over	£1,040
Manual cut	Not applicable	Under 50%	£980
Manual cut	Not applicable	50% and over	£1,680

## Where to use this item

Only:

- to control or manage scrub with the agreement of Natural England (NE) or the Forestry Commission (FC)
- to remove immature trees that could spread disease and that cannot be economically felled with the agreement of the Forestry Commission (FC)

## How this item will benefit the environment

It will restore or maintain priority habitats and protect historic or archaeological features. It will prevent disease spreading from infected sites to the wider environment.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to agree:

- when to carry out the work
- whether to cut by hand or machine
- what to do with stumps
- how to dispose of cut material
- how to control regrowth and injurious weeds
- how to fell all diseased trees within an agreed area
- to remove non-symptomatic trees to reduce the risk of disease (as agreed with the adviser)
- what biosecurity measures to use to avoid transferring disease to other sites

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- records of when the scrub control was carried out
- a record of any pesticide or herbicide treatments, including dates and locations
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants must get any relevant consents before applying for this item. This may include:

- consent from NE to use the item on a Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI)
- consent from English Heritage to use the item on a Scheduled Monument
- a felling licence from the FC

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- a woodland management plan indicating the need for scrub control, if the scrub control takes place in woodland - this does not apply to diseased trees

- an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study, if applicable, setting out the need for scrub control
- photographs of the trees/scrub, before works start
- a Statutory Plant Health Notice (SPHN) or letter from the FC or Animal and Plant Health Agency (APHA) confirming infection on the site, if one has been issued

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED ITEMS

This item can be used on the same area as item TE12 - Stump grinding

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Definitions of scrub, diseased trees and immature trees

Scrub means any woody shrubs, including European gorse, bramble and young trees. It does not include dwarf or western gorse, so this item cannot be used to control those species.

To be eligible under this grant, diseased trees are defined as immature larch infected with *Phytophthora ramorum* subject to a Statutory Plant Health Notice (SPHN)).

An immature tree is one that is up to 25 years old.

### When to use this item

With this item, cut scrub or trees manually or with a machine. Manual removal is carried out on foot, with a clearing saw or chainsaw, and machine cutting from a cab, by a tractor fitted with a flail.

This item can be used:

- if scrub is encroaching on to species-rich grassland
- around archaeological sites or historic features
- if species that depend on managed scrub are present, e.g. turtle dove and brown hairstreak
- within woodland to create permanent or temporary open areas

### How to remove scrub

To remove scrub:

- cut scrub to ground level
- do not disturb roots or leave protruding stems
- use item TE12 - Stump grinding
- keep the site free of scrub for the rest of the agreement

### What to do with diseased trees

If applicants have an SPHN for diseased trees, they must follow the guidance in the SPHN. If an SPHN is not available, fell all infected trees in the contract area and follow the FC's biosecurity guidance.

### Further information

Find out more about biosecurity in the [FC's Biosecurity Guide](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf/%24FILE/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf), [http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FC\\_Biosecurity\\_Guidance.pdf/%24FILE/FC\\_Biosecurity\\_Guidance.pdf](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf/%24FILE/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf)

## Scrub control - difficult sites (SB2) Higher Tier

# Up to 80% of actual costs

### Where to use this item

Only on sites that either:

- need specialist operations or machinery, with costs that cannot be covered by the scheme's fixed-rate scrub control payments - this includes sensitive habitats and areas with difficult or hazardous working conditions, such as steep slopes, bogs and islands
- or have it as a requirement of an approved [Forestry Commission woodland management plan](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/forestry/INFD-9BMJWE), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/forestry/INFD-9BMJWE>

### Where this item cannot be used

to control dwarf and western gorse, as these are key parts of heathland to manage scrub by grazing

## REQUIREMENTS

- send at least 3 written quotations for completing the work to Natural England or the Forestry Commission - quotes must identify associated costs
- agree the selected quote with Natural England or the Forestry Commission
- carry out scrub control during the autumn and winter
- follow guidance on what to do with any stumps and how to dispose of cut material
- control re-growth

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of when the scrub control was carried out
- a record of any pesticide or herbicide treatments, including dates and locations
- a Forestry Commission approved Woodland Management Plan or a Natural England approved implementation plan, if relevant
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the completed work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- photograph before works commence
- item specification if required

If the work is set out in one of the following, applicants will need to send it with their application:

- a Forestry Commission approved Woodland Management Plan
- a Natural England approved implementation plan

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### **Management**

Cut scrub to ground level. Do not disturb the roots or leave protruding stems.

For stump removal use the TE12 - Stump grinding.

## Tree removal (SB3) Higher Tier

# £144 per tree

### Where to use this item

Only if there is a net cost for the removal of timber, allowing for any timber sales.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will support the removal of trees, helping to restore open habitats or prevent damage to environmental features.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the work, including:

- the removal of trees in the agreed places and at the agreed times
- ensuring that no trees are uprooted (or roots removed after felling) on historic or archaeological features
- the removal of felled trees from the site, leaving some wood stacked in the agreed areas

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying the Forestry Commission must be consulted on the need for a felling licence and possibly an environmental impact assessment. A copy of their advice must be submitted with this application.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the trees to be removed

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**



# Chemical bracken control (SB4) Higher Tier

## £170 per ha

### Where to use this item

Only with a land management option and where agreed with Natural England.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It is for chemically controlling bracken. This will restore or maintain high value natural habitats and their associated wildlife, protect archaeological features and help maintain or enhance the landscape's character.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the work, including:

- the use of asulam or glyphosate to control bracken, providing this is within the approval for the product at the time of application

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the proposed area to be managed
- copies of the Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study, if one exists

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Bracken control

If the application is successful one of two approaches will be followed depending on the size and complexity of the bracken problem. There is no fixed threshold, but Natural England will help with the choice.

### Large sites

On larger sites, particularly where major habitat restoration is involved, a Natural England approved Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study will be needed. This will include:

- areas to be controlled
- methods of control
- follow up treatments to control re-growth
- any risks to sites of archaeological or ecological importance, soil erosion risks or effects on the landscape (short and long term)

### Small sites

On smaller, less complex sites an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study may not be needed. On such sites a simple plan may suffice, one that includes a map showing areas to be treated and dates of control.

### Environmental concerns

Make sure that the planned bracken control has a minimal negative effect on other environmental interests on the site. In general, chemical control causes less disturbance to archaeological sites, ground nesting birds and invertebrates than mechanical control. But it will kill other species of fern and may be more damaging to other plants around the site.

All herbicide applications (including aerial application) must follow the law and relevant codes of practice. [Natural England's bracken control guidelines](#) should also be followed. <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/35013>

Make sure any relevant consents are in place before carrying out the work. This includes [consent from the Environment Agency to spray near a watercourse](#). <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/application-to-use-herbicides-in-or-near-water>

If any areas are missed they will need to be sprayed in the following year.

### Site regeneration

As the site regenerates, control any bracken regrowth or weeds such as nettle, thistle, dock or ragwort. More effective bracken control may result if combined with appropriate grazing, where possible, due to the effects of trampling.

### Further information

Further information is available from:

- Symes, N. & Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy
- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](#) at the Arc Trust <http://www.arc-trust.org/habitat-management.html>
- Natural England's guide to [grazing management of lowland heathland](#), <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/72034?category=30009>
- Natural England's guide to [protecting soils and the historic environment when restoring or re-creating lowland heathland](#), <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/33016?category=30009>

# Mechanical bracken control (SB5) Higher Tier

## £169 per ha

### Where to use this item

Only with a land management option and where agreed with Natural England.

### How this item will benefit the environment

This item is for mechanically controlling bracken. This will restore or maintain high value natural habitats and their associated wildlife, protect archaeological features and help maintain or enhance the landscape's character.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the work.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the proposed area to be managed
- copies of the implementation plan or feasibility study, if one exists

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Bracken control

If the application is successful one of two approaches will be followed depending on the size and complexity of the bracken problem. There is no fixed threshold, but Natural England will help with the choice.

#### Large sites

On larger sites, particularly where major habitat restoration is involved, a Natural England approved Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study will be needed. This will include:

- areas to be controlled
- methods of control
- follow up treatments to control re-growth
- any risks to sites of archaeological or ecological importance, soil erosion risks or effects on the landscape (short and long term)

#### Small sites

On smaller, less complex sites an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study may not be needed. On such sites a simple plan may suffice, one that includes a map showing areas to be treated and dates of control.

### **Environmental concerns**

Make sure that the planned bracken control has a minimal negative effect on other environmental interests on the site. You should follow [Natural England's bracken control guidelines](http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/35013). <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/35013>

In general, mechanical control may cause more disturbance to archaeological sites, ground nesting birds and invertebrates than chemical control. During the nesting season make sure that birds are not nesting in the treated area.

### **Frequency**

The site should be treated twice in year 1 and this repeated for at least three years, depending on the level of success achieved.

### **Site regeneration**

As the site regenerates, control any bracken regrowth or weeds such as nettle, thistle, dock or ragwort. More effective bracken control may result if combined with appropriate grazing, where possible, due to the effects of trampling.

### **Further information**

Further information is available from:

- Symes, N. & Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy
- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](http://www.arc-trust.org/habitat-management.html) at the Arc Trust. <http://www.arc-trust.org/habitat-management.html>

# Rhododendron control (SB6) Higher Tier

Slope of site	Rhododendron height	Payment
Level or gentle slope (0 to 11 degree incline)	Average height is less than 2.5m tall	£2,800 per hectare (ha)
Moderate slope (12 to 18 degree incline)	Between 2.5m to 4m tall	£3,200 per ha
Steep or very steep slope (19 degrees or more)	Average height is over 4m tall	£4,400 per ha

The higher rate will apply where the site is classed in 1 or more of these categories, e.g. if the site is on a steep slope with an average height of less than 2.5m.

## How this item will benefit the environment

It supports rhododendron control, reducing the negative effect this can have on a site.

Rhododendron reduces the biodiversity value of a site, hindering woodland regeneration and, once established, is difficult and costly to eradicate.

Rhododendron can also be a host for the fungus-like pathogen *Phytophthora ramorum*, which affects larch.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- check the slope on the ground - it cannot be based solely on map contours
- destroy all rhododendron within the target area
- cut all live rhododendron material from the stump, allowing access for chemical spraying of any re-growth
- treat all stumps with a suitable herbicide on the day of being cut and in frost free and rain free conditions - rain should not be forecast for at least 6 hours
- dispose of cut material so that it allows access to stumps for chemical spraying of any re-growth
- control any injurious weed species, when the site regenerates, if there is a risk of spread to pasture land (used by grazing livestock or conserved for forage)
- chemically treat re-growth with a recommended herbicide - follow the manufacturer's guidance on application rates and safety requirements
- keep the operations in line with recommendations in the Forestry Commission practice guide [Managing and controlling invasive rhododendron](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/fcpgo17.pdf/%24FILE/fcpgo17.pdf), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/fcpgo17.pdf/%24FILE/fcpgo17.pdf>

## Removing infected rhododendron

When removing rhododendron infected with *Phytophthora ramorum* or *Phytophthora kernoviae*, agreement holders must:

- clean or disinfect clothing, equipment and vehicles according to advice given in the [Forestry Commission biosecurity guidance](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf/%24FILE/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf), [http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FC\\_Biosecurity\\_Guidance.pdf/%24FILE/FC\\_Biosecurity\\_Guidance.pdf](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/pdf/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf/%24FILE/FC_Biosecurity_Guidance.pdf)
- use disinfectants that have gone through a Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) safety assessment as well as an environmental assessment

## Burning waste material

Agreement holders may need to discuss whether to burn cut waste material with their local Forestry Commission or Natural England adviser. If told to burn it, agreement holders must:

- agree in advance where the burn site will be
- build bonfires far enough away from trees (at least 10m from the crown of any tree) to avoid damaging them
- make sure that burning sites and piles of wood are not on patches of ground where they could damage species-rich grassland, anthills or other ecological or archaeological features

- clean up the site as soon as possible after burning - burning on a metal sheet reduces damage to the soil and makes it easier to remove ash from the site

### What the management plan needs to include

When used on a woodland site the woodland management plan needs to both:

- identify rhododendron as being present
- identify rhododendron as posing a threat to successful management

These do not apply if rhododendron is being removed due to a tree health issue.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- an approved woodland management plan (unless the rhododendron is infected by *Phytophthora ramorum*, *Phytophthora kernoviae* or within 3km of an Statutory Plant Health Notice and a management plan is not needed)
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Assess the slope class

The payment rate depends on the slope of the site and height of the rhododendron.

Agreement holders can estimate the slope by eye but a clinometer will give a better assessment.

Contours on maps can give an indication of slope but applicants will need to check the slope on the ground.

Slope class	Type	Percentage incline (%)	Degree
1	Level	0 to 10	0 to 6
2	Gentle	11 to 20	7 to 11
3	Moderate	21 to 33	12 to 18
4	Steep	34 to 50	19 to 27
5	Very steep	over 51	over 28

# Planting standard parkland tree (TE2) Higher Tier

## £24.50 per tree

### Where to use this item

Only with one of the following options:

- WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland
- WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland
- WD6 - Creation of wood pasture

### How this item will benefit the environment

If successful new standard trees will be established in wood pasture and parklands, replacing lost trees or restoring sustainable populations.

### REQUIREMENTS

- plant each tree in a pit deep and wide enough to contain the full depth and width of the root system
- plant native species at least 2 metres tall with enough spacing to allow for full crown development
- replace dead trees in the following planting season
- carry out work between 1 November and 31 March
- stake and tie each tree securely, using material appropriate to the size and species of tree
- prevent wind damage by using flexible rubber and adjustable tree ties
- maintain stakes and ties until the tree is established
- remove ties when the tree is established and no longer needs support
- protect trees from livestock and wild mammals
- control weeds until the trees have become established.

Do not:

- plant trees beneath or within 20m of overhead power lines, or other overhead and underground services
- let tree guards damage the growing tree

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- the date location and method of any weed control undertaken
- the dates of planting
- details of age, height and species planted
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the site where trees will be planted

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### RELATED ITEMS

This item can be used with the following items:

- TE6 - Tree guard (tube and mesh)
- TE7 - Tree guard (wood post and rail)
- TE8 - Tree guard (wood post and wire)
- TE9 - Parkland tree guard (welded steel)

## Supply and plant tree (TE4) Higher Tier

### £1.28 per tree

#### Payment for creating new woodland

Agreement holders will get paid up to £6,800 per hectare (ha) if they are using this item to create new woodland.

#### Payments for restocking after a tree health issue

Agreement holders will be paid if they are restocking woodland where trees have been infected by Chalara fraxinea or Phytophthora ramorum. They will be paid up to the following amounts:

Restock Tree species	Ancient woodland site	Other
Native	£3,500 per ha	£2,750 per ha
Non-native	£1,750 per ha	£2,250 per ha

Support is only available if trees are infected by Chalara fraxinea or Phytophthora ramorum.

The Forestry Commission or Animal and Plant Health Agency must confirm cases of Chalara fraxinea.

Phytophthora ramorum infected larch and sweet chestnut has to be confirmed by a statutory plant health notice (SPHN).

#### Where to use this item

On:

- bare land (any land that has not been woodland for at least 10 years before the date of application)
- woodland (following felling due to a plant health disease)
- hedgerows

This item can be used to plant single trees, clumps of trees, hedgerows or woodlands.

#### Where this item cannot be used

- if tree planting could damage areas of ecological, archaeological or historic interest
- to plant woodland for producing Christmas trees or biomass
- for restocking woodlands following a conditional felling licence (except where this has been issued for tree health reasons)
- to plant ash trees

#### How this item benefits the environment

It will help create a range of environmental and social benefits that:

- supports wildlife, particularly when new woodland links habitats or creates a protective buffer
- reduces the risk of floods, improves water quality and prevents soil erosion
- is resilient and can adapt to climate change
- enhances the landscape

## REQUIREMENTS

#### Prepare a woodland creation plan

When creating new woodland agreement holders must prepare a woodland creation plan (included in the application) that states the:

- planting objectives
- species to be used
- planting density (the number of trees per hectare)



- percentage of open space and means of protection (fencing or individual tree guards as appropriate)
- areas to be planted and any areas of open space within the woodland (provide a map showing this information)

### Creating or restocking woodland

Follow the requirements set out in the following table if trees are being planted to create new woodland or restock woodland:

Dimensions	Create new woodland	Create new woodland to improve water quality or reduce flood risk	Restock after a tree health issue
Minimum agreement size	3ha	1ha	0.25ha
Minimum block size	0.5ha	0.1ha	0.1ha
Minimum width	20m	10m	20m
Minimum stocking density	400 stems per ha (sph)	1,600sph	400sph
Maximum internal open space	20%	20%	20%
Maximum individual glade area (after canopy closure)	0.5ha	0.5ha	0.5ha
Maximum linear open space width (after canopy closure)	20m	20m	

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- supply, plant and weed young trees
- use tree species appropriate for the soil and climatic conditions that support the planting objectives
- select planting stock that complies with the [Forest Reproductive Material Regulations 2002](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/frm), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/frm> (where applicable) and is appropriate in size and stock type to site and prevailing conditions
- create a suitable planting position by spraying herbicide in advance, scarifying in lines or preparing a bare patch of land (screefing) with a spade
- use a planting method that helps survival, with roots fully inserted in the ground with the root collar at ground level - the tree must be firmed in without damaging the stem
- protect young trees by attaching a 0.6m spiral secured with a cane (first check and agree this with an adviser, not required for conifer planting)
- plant trees when dormant and attach the spiral guard immediately
- maintain spirals until the trees are big enough to no longer need protection
- stop livestock and other grazing animals from damaging the trees - use protective fencing or individual guards as needed (if using tree shelters, these will replace spiral guards)
- remove the spiral and cane when no longer needed and dispose of or recycle them in line with waste disposal regulations
- replace all dead plants in the following planting season (each grant funded tree must be alive and in good condition by the end of an agreement)

### Keep trees weed-free

Trees must be protected from competing weeds for 3 years, or until they are big enough not to be threatened by competition from weeds.

This can be done by using suitable mulch, an appropriate herbicide or weeding by hand. Follow relevant laws and codes of practice if spraying.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan if required

A woodland creation plan is not required for:

- planting following a tree health issue
- planting of single trees
- planting of hedgerows

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED ITEMS

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- FG1 - Fencing
- FG2 - Sheep netting
- FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement
- FG5 - Fencing supplement - difficult sites
- FG9 - Deer fencing
- FG12 - Wooden field gate
- FG14 - Badger gate
- FG15 - Water gates
- TE5 - Supplement for use of individual tree-shelters

Speak to a Forestry Commission adviser about locating other options on a site.

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Selecting tree species

Select a tree species for the site that suits the management objectives, local soil, and current and predicted climate conditions. Use the FC [tree species selection tool](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/website/forestresearch.nsf/ByUnique/INFD-5V8JDC), <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/website/forestresearch.nsf/ByUnique/INFD-5V8JDC> to find the right species and estimate yield class.

## Supplement for use of individual tree-shelters (TE5) Higher Tier

# £1.60 per unit

### Where to use this item

Only on woodland as a supplement to the tree planting capital item (TE4)

### Where this item cannot be used

On its own or with any other option, supplement or item other than item TE4

### How this item will benefit the environment

It provides tree shelters to protect young, establishing trees from damage by browsing animals.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- put up a tree shelter immediately after the tree is planted
- make sure each shelter is flush with the ground to keep out small animals such as mice and voles
- secure each shelter with a 25mm by 25 mm wooden stake, placed in an upright position
- check shelters regularly, maintaining them until the tree or shrub is established
- design and support shelters so they last for at least 5 years
- dispose or recycle shelters and stakes according to relevant waste disposal regulations

The shelter protects trees from grazing animals and the height of the animal determines which shelter to use, e.g.:

- for roe, muntjac or chinese water deer use 1.2m shelters
- for fallow, red or sika deer use 1.8m shelters
- for hares and rabbits use 1.2m tree shelter or smaller if available

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

# Parkland tree guard - welded steel (TE9) Higher Tier

## £170 per tree

### Where to use this item

Only with:

- WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland
- WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland
- WD6 - Creation of wood pasture

### REQUIREMENTS

- install a tree guard in accordance with the specification agreed with Natural England
- provide sufficient clearance so that grazing animals cannot reach the stem of the tree

Do not:

- fasten guards to the tree itself
- allow guards to rub against, constrict, or cause damage to the tree

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- a detailed specification if required

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the trees to be guarded
- item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

#### Using tree guards

Use metal tree guards to protect standard trees from vandalism, mowing, livestock and wild animals in parkland and areas with public access.

Use guards traditional to the area.

This item cannot be used to replace existing guards to maintain the parkland's character.

## Stump grinding (TE12) Higher Tier

# £24 per stump

### Where to use this item

Only in conjunction with a management or restoration option where approved by a Natural England adviser.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It is used to support habitat restoration and management by removing tree stumps that would otherwise restrict access for restoration or management works.

If successful stumps will have been cleared, there will be little or no ground disturbance and wood chippings will have been removed.

### REQUIREMENTS

- grind individual tree stumps down to ground level or below
- clean up the site after the works, including removal of wood chippings

Do not:

- allow works, including access routes, to compact soil

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the stumps

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

This item is only to be used where tree stumps are restricting access to the site for habitat restoration and management. It cannot be used for general tidying up where there is no impediment to the management of the site.

The objective is to clear stumps to ground level with minimum impact on the soil. Occasionally there may be a reason to grind stumps below ground level leaving a depression. Any such depressions can often be left - there are usually good reasons for not moving soil from elsewhere. Applicants must discuss and agree any infilling with soil with Natural England.

Wood chippings may occasionally be used as a mulch provided this has been agreed with a Natural England adviser.

# Creation of dead wood habitat on trees (TE13) Higher Tier

## £175 per tree

### Where to use this item

Only be used when the following conditions are met:

- on trees that are located on or adjacent to sites with existing populations of veteran trees
- where the land around the trees being treated is managed by cutting or extensive grazing
- where tree cover across the area where they are located does not exceed 25 per cent
- on trees that will not impede or be impeded by the crown or canopy of existing veteran trees
- on trees that are of the same native species and genetic origin as existing native veteran trees in the same area

### How this item will benefit the environment

It promotes continuity in the provision of dead wood habitat to benefit rare or specialised wildlife where there is a generational gap between existing veteran trees and their successors.

If successful there will be deliberate 'damage' or ageing of younger trees in association with veteran trees where there is a generation gap in the recruitment of future veterans. This will mimic the natural damage caused for example by lightning strikes, branch failure and woodpecker holes, speeding up of the process of producing valuable wood decay habitats otherwise only found in very old trees.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- remove any existing scrub around the selected trees
- carry out the work as set out in an approved specification or implementation plan -conduct the work between 1 September and 1 March, using skilled labour
- cut trees at sufficient height to prevent grazing of re-growth
- enable monitoring of the trees' response to cutting, by tagging each tree and taking and retaining before and after photographs and making them available to Natural England on request
- leave all mature and veteran standing trees and all standing and fallen deadwood
- keep the deadwood of any tree that dies following veteranisation work and plant a replacement tree of the same native species and genetic origin

Do not:

- use this item for work required for health and safety purposes

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- records required of the work undertaken and details of the persons undertaking it and their qualifications
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- photographs of the trees
- a map showing the location of mature and veteran standing trees and standing and fallen deadwood

Applicants must provide a written assessment and advice on the work required from a qualified arboricultural expert. This assessment must:

- lay out the intended outcome of the work
- explain how the long term health and viability of the trees to be cut will be maintained
- explain the requirements for subsequent management

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED OPTIONS AND ITEMS

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- BE6 - Veteran tree surgery
- TE2 - Planting standard parkland tree
- TE7 - Tree guard (wood post and rail)
- TE8 - Tree guard (wood post and wire)
- TE9 - Parkland tree guard - welded steel
- WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland
- WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland
- WD6 - Creation of wood pasture

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Picking the right trees

'Veteranisation' or the creation of dead wood habitat on trees could shorten the tree's life. It should be attempted only where there are enough trees to be left without such treatment and no late-mature trees to provide successors to any veterans. This method should never be used on trees which may already be developing wood decay habitat, trees that already have important habitat, nor trees where damage may become a safety issue such as in parks or towns. Any intervention still needs to be sufficiently small so that it does not pose an immediate threat to the tree, allowing it to survive for many years.

### Management

A number of methods can be used to encourage veteran features on younger trees. Advice must be sought from a suitably qualified arboriculturalist before carrying out any work. These methods include:

- cutting the tops of trees that are likely to respond to pollarding
- making holes in live standing trees to initiate rot
- deliberately damaging the bark to induce decay or simulate sap runs
- break branches, rather than saw them off flush, or create 'coronet' ends
- increase water retention in forks and crowns of trees by drilling holes

For more detailed advice on suitable techniques applicants should speak to their adviser.

### Planting new trees

In the event that a tree dies following this work it must be replaced with a tree of the same species and genetic origin. Any replacement tree needs to be planted where there is enough room to grow an open crown.

### Consents and permissions

Be aware that a number of consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- old trees especially can host European Protected Species, such as bats

Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement) from the Forestry Commission (FC). <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/safetreemanagement>

Follow the advice on the [VETree](http://www.vetree.eu/en/page/1/) website for creating veteran features. <http://www.vetree.eu/en/page/1/>

### Further information

Read these useful guidance booklets for more information on managing ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/), <http://www.ancienttreeforum.co.uk/resources/ancient-tree-guides/>
- Lonsdale, D (ed.) 2013, Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management Tree Council
- Read, H. 2000 Veteran trees: A guide to good management. Veteran Trees Initiative , available to download from Natural England publications pages. <http://publications.naturalengland.org.uk/publication/75035>



# Identification of orchard fruit tree varieties (TE14) Higher Tier

## £29 per variety

### Where to use this item

Only with one of the following options:

- BE4 - Management of traditional orchards
- BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards

### How this item will benefit the environment

If successful local and rare varieties of fruit trees will be identified which will help select varieties to be planted in orchard restoration projects.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- agree which specialist or organisation will identify the tree varieties
- have samples of fruit or leaves identified
- produce a map of the orchard showing the location of each species and variety identified

Samples can only be identified by:

- posting them to an organisation that provides a recognised fruit identification service
- getting a specialist to visit and identify the tree varieties at the right time of year for fruit or leaf identification

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- map of the orchard showing the location(s) of each species and variety identified
- specialist body record of identified species

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

# Grip blocking drainage channels (WN1) Higher Tier

## £14.80 per block

### Where to use this item

Only where:

- grip blocking will contribute to restoration of priority habitats
- re-wetting can provide habitat for breeding waders
- the Environment Agency gives written support regarding impact on flood risk
- blocking of grips or drainage channels is included in an implementation plan or feasibility study agreed with Natural England

This item must be used with 1 of the following options:

- UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds
- UP3 - Management of moorland

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will maintain and restore moorland habitats, vegetation mosaics and associated wildlife.

If successful there will be restored, re-wetted moorland and peatland habitats supporting target vegetation and species.

### REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to block grips or drainage channels as agreed in the implementation plan or feasibility study ensuring:

- the blocks are wider than the grip and keyed into grip sides to prevent breaching and erosion
- the grips are blocked from the top downwards
- dams match the topography with varied positions at around 7m apart (but no more than 10m apart)
- the grips can fill to a water level above the base of the next dam higher up the slope
- the top of dams are slightly higher than ground level after installation and natural shrinkage, water then overflows away from the dam and soaks into the ground
- a very low ground pressure excavator with wide tracks is used when grip blocking

Inspect all grips and blocks ensuring that:

- there are no breaches in grips and blocks
- excess water from the grip does not flow into the channel below the block
- excess water across the moor soaks into the ground, down slope from the grip
- no water flows between dams except for natural peak surface water

Take photographs and write records of inspections. Send these to Natural England within 1 month of inspection if the work does not meet the requirements.

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- damage surface vegetation
- expose bare soil or peat
- establish linear routes

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a copy of the implementation plan or feasibility study, where applicable
- photographs of the sites that will be blocked
- Environment Agency advice if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

#### Employ specialist contractors

Consider employing specialist contractors to do this work.

#### Pick the right location

Pick areas:

- where deep peat soils can support peat-forming blanket bog vegetation
- targeted by Natural England as priority habitat for moorland and blanket bog

#### Managing historic and archaeological features

Show the location of any features of historic or archaeological importance in the Implementation Plan to avoid damaging them.

#### Using vehicles and machines on site

Reduce machine damage by adding steps in the implementation plan to factor in:

- site access tracks
- the surrounding habitat
- the use of low pressure and appropriate machines

#### Further information

Information on the best ways to grip block different sites can be found on the [Yorkshire Peat Partnership website](http://www.yppartnership.org.uk/restoration/). <http://www.yppartnership.org.uk/restoration/>

# Creation of scrapes and gutters (WN2) Higher Tier

## £2.80 per square m

### Where to use this item

Only in locations agreed with a Natural England adviser.

### Where this item cannot be used

On historic or archaeological features, unless consent has been given by a Natural England specialist or local Historic Environment Service

### How this item will benefit the environment

Scrapes provide areas of bare ground, which may be designed to hold water in wet habitats or provide early successional areas in dry habitats. Gutters provide shallow channels to hold/transport water through wet habitats and provide feeding areas for waders.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- agree a detailed specification with Natural England for creating scrapes or gutters
- create the scrapes or gutters in accordance with this specification
- follow the implementation plan and complete it

### Scrapes for waders and wildfowl

If creating scrapes for waders and wildfowl, agreement holders are likely to need to:

- locate them at least 100m away from hedges or tall trees, in the place shown in the specification
- carry out the work between July and November
- make sure the scrape has an irregular shape, to maximise the length of its edge
- grade the sides of the scrape so that there is a gentle slope from the shallow margins (3cm to 5cm deep) to a maximum depth of 40cm to 50cm at the centre
- leave the surface of the scrape rough
- keep the scrape wet by using gravity feed or pumping between mid-November and June if groundwater or rainfall is low (as agreed with Natural England)

### Gutters

If creating gutters, agreement holders are likely to need to:

- create them in the places shown in the specification
- carry out the work between July and November
- make sure the gutters are at least 30cm deep and 1.5m wide, with gently sloping edges and shallow margins that are 3cm to 5cm deep
- connect the gutters to ditches with high water levels
- periodically isolate gutters from ditches where ditch water levels cannot be held high
- keep the gutters wet using gravity feed, water control structures or pumps (as detailed in the specification agreed with Natural England)

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use spoil to fill hollows or low areas within the field or to form a bund or bank around the scrape or gutter
- place spoil on areas with high soil erosion or runoff potential
- create islands within scrapes
- carry out works when ground-nesting birds are present
- fence the scrapes and gutters

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- specification of agreed works
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- implementation plan or feasibility study if required

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- consent required from Natural England or Local Authority if on historic or archaeological features
- photograph before works commence

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED ITEMS

This item can be used on the same area as the following options:

- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### What the specification should include

The specification will identify the purpose of the scrapes and gutters, and will be tailored accordingly. It should take account of site hydrology, soil type, botanical interest, archaeological and historic features, and landscape character. The shape, size, depth, location, methods, timing of the work, spoil disposal and ongoing management requirements should all be specified. Specialist advice may be required.

### How to apply for consent

Consent may be needed from the local land drainage authority (such as the Environment Agency, Internal Drainage Board or local authority) to create scrapes or dispose of spoil. A waste exemption licence may also be required.

### When not to use this item

This item should not be used to prevent soil erosion or runoff. The soil and water capital items should be used instead.

# Ditch, dyke and rhine restoration (WN3) Higher Tier

## £7.30 per m

### Where to use this item

Only if an assessment of the existing biological interest of the site, particularly related to protected species, is sent with the application.

### Where this item cannot be used

For routine agricultural maintenance or to drain land prone to waterlogging.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will restore the wildlife value of overgrown or neglected ditches and help to establish raised water levels for restoring or creating habitats.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- carry out the restoration work between 1 July and 28 February (the exact timing will be determined by the pre-application assessment)
- only re-profile or cut deeper than the original profile by agreement with the adviser
- if re-profiling, create a variety of depths in the channel, from 70cm to 100cm, grading to a shallow, wet, marginal fringe
- if re-profiling, make sure the profile varies, with most of the slopes between 30 and 45 degrees
- work from one bank in an upstream direction, restoring only half the ditch in any one year
- restore one side of the ditch along its full length, or alternate 100m sections along both sides
- retain any in-channel features such as gravel beds, riffles and natural meanders
- create berms along the sides of the ditch
- secure material at the downstream end of the ditch during dredging or re-profiling to capture silt in the water, and remove this when any silt has settled
- place the spoil on top of the bank or in the field next to it, making sure that it is not used to fill hollows or low areas within the field
- make sure that the spoil is not placed on historic or archaeological features
- spread the spoil thinly to prevent a spoil bank from forming
- place all fences at least 1m away from the edge of the bank top

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- reprofile or cut deeper than the original profile unless by agreement with the adviser
- fill hollows or low areas within the field with spoil
- place spoil on historic or archaeological feature

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works;
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed.

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- an assessment of the existing biological interest of the site, particularly related to protected species
- a copy of any relevant consents (for example from the Environment Agency, Internal Drainage Board or Historic England)
- photographs before works commence

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## RELATED ITEMS

This item can be used on the same area as the following options:

- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland
- GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland
- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features
- HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

### Where to use this item

Use this item on ditches that have become silted up through neglect and have channels that need to be cleaned and banks that need to be reprofiled. Using this item will create a more varied habitat for wildlife.

This item can also be used to prevent the degradation of historic environment features and waterlogged archaeological deposits by helping to support high water levels.

### Re-profiling ditches, dykes and rhines

The profile of restored ditches, dykes and rhines should reflect the character of existing features in the local area.

# Ditch, dyke and rhine creation (WN4) Higher Tier

## £8.40 per m

### Where to use this item

Only in combination with one of the following management options:

- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland
- GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland
- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features
- HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation

### Where this item cannot be used

To create ditches that will lead to waterlogged land being drained or archaeological features being dried out.

### How this item will benefit the environment

It aims to establish raised water levels to help restore or create habitats.

## REQUIREMENTS

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- create a channel 70cm to 100cm deep, creating a variety of depths in it and grading to a shallow, wet marginal fringe
- make sure that the bank slope profile varies along the length of the ditch (most slopes should be between 30 and 45 degrees)
- create berms along the sides of the ditch
- place the excavated material on top of the bank or in the field next to it, making sure it does not fill hollows or low areas
- make sure the excavated material is not placed on historic or archaeological features
- spread the spoil thinly to prevent a spoil bank from forming

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- fill hollows or low areas within the field with spoil
- place spoil on historic or archaeological features

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail



Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency.

Applicants are likely to have to send the following with their application:

- copies of advice and relevant consents received from the Environment Agency, Internal Drainage Board or Historic England
- photographs before works commence

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### **ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM**

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

Agreement holders should aim to create ditches, rhines or dykes that are characteristic of the local landscape.

## Restoration of large water bodies (WN7) Higher Tier

# Up to 100% of actual costs

### Where to use this item

Only:

- on Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) with ecologically degraded water bodies of 1 hectare or more
- if other land management options are included in the agreement

### How this item benefits the environment

It will restore the wildlife value of large water bodies that have become degraded.

## REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in year 1 of the agreement
- provide a minimum of 3 written quotations for the completion of the works, identifying associated costs
- agree the selected quotation with Natural England in year 1 of the agreement
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for the completion of the work
- a copy of Environment Agency advice and any permits
- photographs before works commence
- item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

This item can be used to support the implementation of lake restoration plans. It may also cover one or more of the following:

- water management
- scrub management
- management of invasive non-native species
- fish removal
- bird control
- desilting

# Timber sluice (WN8) Higher Tier

## £315 per sluice

### Where to use this item

Only with one of the following management options:

- GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland
- GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland
- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features
- HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation
- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen

### How this item benefits the environment

It will provide a simple mechanism for water level control, which will support raised water levels for restoring or creating habitats.

### REQUIREMENTS

- construct the sluice to the size and height agreed with Natural England
- use pre-cut tongue and groove or chamfered boards, so that they fit tightly together and can easily be re-used or replaced
- drive the boards far into the ditch sides and ditch bed, so that the bottoms are at least 300mm into impermeable soil (failure to do this will cause leaks)
- make sure that the boards are long enough to raise the water to the desired level
- install a first board central to the ditch, making sure it is absolutely vertical
- drive in subsequent boards on either side of the central board and build towards each ditch bank
- make sure that the final boards are well keyed into the ditch banks (use horizontal timbers or 'string pieces' to prevent them from moving or spreading)

Alternatively, for seepage barriers agreement holders will need to follow these steps:

- construct the barrier using wooden slats
- make sure the slats are formed either vertically or horizontally (if they are less than 2m wide)
- leave a small gap of 2mm between each slat to allow the slow movement of water
- use posts to support and secure the slats
- make sure the vertically arranged slats stay in place by using horizontal timbers to brace them to posts on either side of the ditch
- once the vertical boards are in place, cut out an appropriately sized opening and screw metal channeling to each vertical edge so that it accepts sluice boards
- install a plank bridge across the back of the board tops on the downstream side
- secure the plank bridge firmly into the ditch banks (to strengthen the structure and allow access to the drop boards for adjustment)

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works;
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed.

Before applying for this item, applicants should contact the Environment Agency.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- copies of any advice or consent received from the Environment Agency or other relevant consents, for example from the Internal Drainage Board
- photographs before works commence

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

Use this item on drains, ditches and minor watercourses of appropriate, relatively small size. Use 'like for like' materials if replacing an existing timber sluice.

## Brick, stone or concrete sluice (WN9) Higher Tier

# £2480 per sluice

### Where to use this item

Only in combination with one of the following management options:

- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland
- GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland
- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS13 - Management of grassland for target features
- GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features
- HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation

### How this item will benefit the environment

It aims to provide a robust and substantial structure for water level control to support raised water levels for habitat restoration or creation.

### REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency:

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a copy of advice provided by the Environment Agency
- any relevant consents, e.g. from the Environment Agency, Internal Drainage Board or Historic England
- photographs before works commence
- item specification if required

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

## ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

Applications for consent will need to be supported by fully dimensioned drawings and the specification.

If the sluice replaces an existing one, materials and construction should reflect the original. Otherwise, choice of materials and construction should reflect similar features in the local area.

## Up to 100% of actual costs

### Where to use this item

Only on sites where it is not possible to use standard soil bunds or sluices to raise water levels. The item must be used in combination with one of the following options:

- GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders
- GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl
- LH1 - Management of lowland heathland
- LH2 - Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland
- LH3 - Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland
- WD7 - Management of successional areas and scrub
- WD8 - Creation of successional areas and scrub
- WT6 - Management of reedbed
- WT7 - Creation of reedbed
- WT8 - Management of fen
- WT9 - Creation of fen
- WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog

### How this item will benefit the environment

It will provide bespoke water penning or control structures to support raised water levels for restoring or creating habitats.

### REQUIREMENTS

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in year 1 of the agreement
- provide a minimum of 3 written quotations for the completion of the works, identifying associated costs
- agree the selected quotation with Natural England in year 1 of the agreement
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed time period

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works;
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed
- any consents or permissions connected with the work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- the three quotes for completion of the work
- photographs of the site before work takes place
- a copy of any advice or consent received from the Environment Agency
- any other relevant consents, for example from the Internal Drainage Board

**The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.**

### **ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS FOR HOW TO CARRY OUT THIS ITEM**

*The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does **not** form part of the requirements for this item.*

#### **How to apply for consent**

Fully dimensioned drawings and the specification itself will be required when applying for consent.

#### **Where to use this item**

This item can be used for raising banks, installing gauge boards or tilting weirs.





Department  
for Environment  
Food & Rural Affairs



The European  
Agricultural Fund for  
Rural Development:  
Europe investing in  
rural areas



**Natural England is here to secure a healthy natural environment for people to enjoy, where wildlife is protected and England's traditional landscapes are safeguarded for future generations.**

ISBN 978-1-78367-228-8

Catalogue Code: NE633

**[www.gov.uk/natural-england](http://www.gov.uk/natural-england)**

Natural England publications are available as accessible pdfs from **[www.gov.uk/natural-england](http://www.gov.uk/natural-england)**. Should an alternative format of this publication be required, please contact our enquiries line for more information: 0300 060 3900 or email **[enquiries@naturalengland.org.uk](mailto:enquiries@naturalengland.org.uk)**.

This publication is published by Natural England under the Open Government Licence v3.0 for public sector information. You are encouraged to use, and reuse, information subject to certain conditions. For details of the licence visit **[www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3](http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3)**.

**Please note:** Natural England photographs are only available for non-commercial purposes. For information regarding the use of maps or data visit **[www.gov.uk/how-to-access-natural-englands-maps-and-data](http://www.gov.uk/how-to-access-natural-englands-maps-and-data)**.

© Natural England 2016